NEW SECOND STEPS
IN LATIN
NEW SECOND STEPS
IN LATIN

Michael Klaassen
Mary Allen
Thomas Kent
Elizabeth Kennedy Klaassen
Mary Van Dyke Konopka
Lee Pearcy

Department of Classical Languages
The Episcopal Academy

Focus Publishing
Newburyport, Massachusetts
New Second Steps in Latin continues the sequence begun by New First Steps (Focus Publishing, 2000). It is a text for young adolescents who are learning Latin by the grammar-translation method. As we wrote in the Teacher’s Manual for New First Steps, “We have chosen the grammar/translation method to teach Latin because it exercises uniquely the linguistic skills involved in building categories and forming expectations about individual words, phrases, whole sentences, and texts.”

In New Second Steps, the student’s syntactical horizon expands. The various pronouns, complementary infinitives, and indirect statement make longer, more complex, and more idiomatic sentences possible. Additional genitive, dative, and ablative constructions and subordinating conjunctions also allow the student to experience the expression of complex relationships between elements of a sentence and between ideas.

With this advanced syntax available to us, we were able to base many of our sentences on ancient authors. In some cases, we have been able to quote an author’s words with no or minimal change; when we have done so, we indicate the source.

Vocabulary in New Second Steps is based on Cicero, Vergil, Ovid, and Pliny. New Second Steps adds about 230 words to the 150 in New First Steps.

New Second Steps includes an important feature, chapters devoted to reading connected prose (Chapters VII, XII, XVII, XXII, XXVII, and XXX). We believe that reading narrative in Latin requires skills in addition to those necessary for reading sentences, and that these skills can be systematically taught. In the reading chapters we have used the well-known story of Perseus adapted from Fabulae Faciles to develop these skills.

Together, New First Steps and New Second Steps make up a two-year sequence for middle school students or perhaps a one-year sequence for high school classes. We intend to follow New Second Steps with New Third Steps, which will complete the basic morphology and syntax of Latin and prepare students to read Cicero, Ovid, Pliny, Vergil, and other ancient authors.

It is a pleasure here to renew our thanks to those who have made New Second Steps possible. The Episcopal Academy’s Class of 1944 continued its generous support of the New Steps in Latin project. Jay Crawford, Jon Kulp, and other members of Episcopal’s administration allowed us to devote time and energy to this project and energized us by their belief in it. Martha Gimbel read and evaluated many of the sentences in New Second Steps. Ron Pullins and his staff at Focus Publishing have followed the outstanding job that they did with New First Steps with the elegantly produced volume in your hands. Finally, we are grateful to our students in Episcopal’s Middle and Upper Schools, whose enthusiasm for Latin and efforts to learn it have made the New Steps project both exciting and necessary.

The Episcopal Academy Classics Department
Michael Klaassen, Mary Allen, Tim Kent,
Elizabeth Klaassen, Molly Konopka,
Lee Pearcy
It is assumed that students have a thorough knowledge of the contents of New First Steps as follows:

I. Vocabulary: All Words Listed in New First Steps

II. Forms:
   a) All Regular Declensions of Nouns
   b) All Regular Declensions of Adjectives
   c) All Regular Conjugations of Verbs in the Indicative, Active and Passive
   d) the Irregular Verb sum

III. Syntax:
   a) Agreement
      1. First Rule of Concord: Agreement of Subject and Verb
      2. Second Rule of Concord: Agreement of Adjective and Noun
      3. Agreement of Appositives
      4. Agreement of Predicate Noun, Predicate Adjective and Subject
   b) Uses of Cases
      1. Nominative:
         a) Subject
         b) Predicate Noun
         c) Predicate Adjective
      2. Genitive:
         a) Possession
         b) often translated by “of”
      3. Dative:
         a) Indirect Object
         b) with Certain Adjectives
         c) often translated by “to” or “for”
      4. Accusative:
         a) Direct Object
         b) Motion Towards or Place To Which (ad, in)
         c) Duration of Time or Time How Long
         d) with Certain Prepositions (ad, in)
      5. Ablative:
         a) Means or Instrument
         b) Personal Agent (with ā, ab)
         c) Accompaniment (with cum)
         d) Place Where or In Which (in, prō, sub)
         e) Motion Away From or Place From Which (ā, ab, dē, ē, ex)
         f) Time When
         g) with Certain Prepositions (ā, ab, cum, dē, ē, ex, in, prō, sine, sub)
Lesson I

DEMONSTRATIVES

IS, EA, ID and idem, eadem, idem

A DEMONSTRATIVE is used to point out a person or thing for special attention.

is, ea, id that, those; this, these; or he, she, it

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>cam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Demonstratives may be used as adjectives or as pronouns.

As an adjective, **is**, **ea**, **id** agrees with the noun it modifies in case, number, and gender:

*is puer* that boy; *eius mātris* of that mother; *ea verba* those words

As a pronoun, **is**, **ea**, **id** takes the number and gender of the noun it replaces:

*Eum puerum amō.* I love that boy. → *Eum amō.* I love him.

*Eās mātrēs vocat.* He calls those mothers. → *Eās vocat.* He calls them.

*Ea verba audīvīmus.* We heard those words. → *Ea audīvīmus.* We heard them.

The pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id** in the nominative case is used to emphasize the subject or to indicate a change of subject.

**ĪDEM**, **EADEM**, **IDEM** the same

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>eiusmodm</td>
<td>eiusmodm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>eiusmod</td>
<td>eiusmod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>eiusmodm</td>
<td>eandum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>eiōdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Īdem**, **eadem**, **idem** is the demonstrative **is**, **ea**, **id** with the suffix **-dem**. Note, however, the following changes:

- Change a final **-m** in the forms of **is**, **ea**, **id** to **-n-** before adding the suffix.
- The masculine singular nominative drops the final **-s** of **is** and lengthens the vowel.
- The neuter singular nominative and accusative drop the final **-d** of **id** before the suffix **-dem**.

*Eōdem diē idem vidīmus.* We saw the same (thing) on the same day.
Vocabulary I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Demonstratives</th>
<th>Conjunctions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>idem, eadem, idem</td>
<td>the same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is, ea, id</td>
<td>that, those; this, these; he, she, it, they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autem</td>
<td>however, but; moreover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enim</td>
<td>for (postpositive)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etiam</td>
<td>even, also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nam</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd Conjugation Verbs</th>
<th>2nd Declension Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ardeo, ardēre, arsi, arsūrus</td>
<td>wound, hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum</td>
<td>have, hold; consider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socius, -ī, m.</td>
<td>ally</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise I

A.

1. Is rēx erat amīcus et socius Rōmānōrum.
2. Eius etiam domus prīmā lūce ardēbit.
3. Eī equī habentur bonī.
4. Is īrātus equus onera multa portābat.
5. Id onus est magnum; servī autem id portābunt.
6. Īdem equus ā duce nostrō captus est.
7. Eum nōn habēbimus ducem, nam est amīcus malōrum.
8. Mare arsit eō annō. (Livy 23.31.15)
9. Eōdem tempore etiam socius eōrum erat.
10. Multōs annōs rēgēs urbem Rōmam habuērunt.
11. Rēx et rēgīna multās nāvis in mari habuērunt, cīvēs enim eius rēgnī erant nautae bonī.

B.

1. That king held Rome for many years.
2. The books of these girls are burning.
3. We gave many horses to his allies.
4. At the same time many houses were burning in that city.
5. The soldiers were placing all (their) hope in the horses, for they were swift.
6. We consider the same things good.
7. The same burdens used to make the slaves tired.
8. At that time the name of the Romans was great; now, however, the same lands have new kings.
9. His horse has fled, for the slaves punished it because it had destroyed a field.
10. My brother, however, will give him a good horse, for he has many.
11. The allies of the Romans have good horses, but they will not give them to the Romans.
Lesson II

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The first and second person pronouns occur in all five cases, and are used like nouns.

**FIRST PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>meī</td>
<td>of me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>to / for me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>(from) me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>nostrī, nostrum</td>
<td>of us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>nōbis</td>
<td>to / for us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>nōbis</td>
<td>(from) us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SECOND PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>tū</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>tībī</td>
<td>to / for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>(from) you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>vestrī, vestrum</td>
<td>of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
<td>to / for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
<td>(from) you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Is, ea, id can be used as the third person pronoun.

**Personal Pronouns in the Nominative**

Personal pronouns in the nominative are used to emphasize the subject of the sentence.

- *Ego régem vidī.*  
  *I saw the king.*
- *Nōs régem vidimus.*  
  *We saw the king.*
- *Tū régem vidistī.*  
  *You saw the king.*
- *Vōs régem vidistis.*  
  *You saw the king.*

Personal pronouns are used in compound subjects as follows. Note the person and the number of the verb.

- *Ego et tū sumus amīcī.*  
  *You and I (=we) are friends.*
- *Ego et puer sumus amīcī.*  
  *The boy and I (=we) are friends.*
- *Tū et Caesar estis amīcī.*  
  *You and Caesar (=you) are friends.*

In English compound subjects, the first person comes last: “you and I” or “my father and I.”
In Latin compound subjects, the first person comes first: “ego et tū” or “ego et pater.”

**Cum with the First and Second Person Pronouns**

The preposition *cum*, when used with a personal pronoun, becomes enclitic: it is attached to the end of the personal pronoun to form one word.

- *mēcum*  
  *with me*
- *nōbiscum*  
  *with us*
- *tēcum*  
  *with you*
- *vōbiscum*  
  *with you*
Vocabulary II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension Nouns</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mēns, mentis (-ium), f. mind; intention</td>
<td>ego, mei I, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignis, ignis, (-ium), m. fire</td>
<td>nōs, nostrī / nostrum we, us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostis, hostis, (-ium), m. enemy</td>
<td>tū, tuī you (sg.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis, finis, (-ium), m. end; in plural, territory</td>
<td>vōs, vestri / vestrum you (pl.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Conjunctions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>modo</td>
<td>only, just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn modo…sed etiam not only…but also</td>
<td>aut or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aut…aut either…or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dum (+ present indicative)</td>
<td>while</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise II

A.

1. Ā nōbīs urbs dēlēta erat.
2. Nostrī fīnēs ad vestra flūmina tendunt.
3. Ego tibi multa dōna dedī, nam tū mē amābās.
4. T ū mihi verba sapientia poētae dīxistī.
5. T ua īra in mē fuerat magna.
6. Eius mēns est amīcus mihi, sed nōn tibi.
7. Dum nōs in urbe sacrum ignem servāmus, vōs in marī cum nāvibus hostium pugnātis.
8. Omnia mala ā tē mente tuā sapientī cernentur.
9. Vōs aut in Ītaliam tenditis aut bellum eīs gentibus parātis.
10. Quod iter longum est, nōs in campō manēbimus.
11. Vōs cum eīs ex ingentī campō in altōs montēs exercitum ducēminī.
12. Ego eum audīvī, surrēxī, sed verbum dē rē nōn fēcī.

B.

1. He warned us about the intentions of the enemy.
2. Your letters to them were seized by us at night.
3. You concealed your evil intentions with friendly words.
4. The enemy will be captured with us by them.
5. While it is night the enemy will carry the bodies away from our walls.
6. While the fire burns, we will remain in the mountains.
7. In that year you, our enemy, wrote letters to the tribes.
8. You, not they, sent the letters out of the city with your men.
9. (Our) slaves were carrying the fires for us, because the horses were terrified by it.
10. Not only do we love you, but we also praise your rivers and mountains.
11. I will either come with you, or I will send a messenger to you.
12. They used to flee from us by day, but they were seized by us at night.
Lesson III

PARTICIPLES

PARTICIPLES are verbal adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tenses</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>1st and 2nd conj.: present stem + -ns, -ntis</td>
<td>NO FORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd and 4th conj.: present stem + -ē, -ns, -ntis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāns, amantīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monēns, monentīs</td>
<td>leading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēns, dūcentīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capīēns, capientīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiēns, audientīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>perfect passive stem + -us, -a, -um</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dūctus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>auditus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>perfect passive stem + -ūr- + -us, -a, -um</td>
<td>amātūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>monitūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dūctūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>captūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>audītūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>futūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>about to, going to lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(to be discussed later)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that sum has only a future active participle: futūrus, -a, -um.
The present participle is a 3rd declension adjective of one termination declined like ingēns, ingentīs.
The future active and perfect passive participles are 1st / 2nd declension adjectives declined like bonus, -a, -um.

Because participles are adjectives, they agree with the words that they modify in case, number, and gender and may be used substantively. Because participles are verbs, they can take objects.

rēx dūcēns, rēgis dūcentīs the leading king, of the leading king
fugientēs fleeing (ones) = fugitives poētae scriptūrī librōs the poets about to write books

Tenses of the Participle

The present active participle expresses action taking place at the same time as the main verb.

Scribēns librum

sedēō. I sit writing the book.  I sit while I am writing the book.
sēdī. I sat writing the book.  I sat while I was writing the book.

The perfect passive participle expresses action completed before the time of the main verb.

Urbem captam

videō. I see the captured city.  I see the city which has been captured.
vidī. I saw the captured city.  I saw the city which had been captured.

The future active participle expresses action that will be completed after the time of the main verb.

Puella dictūra

audit. The girl about to speak listens.  The girl who is about to speak listens.
audīvit. The girl about to speak listened.  The girl who was about to speak listened.
Vocabulary III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Declension Nouns</th>
<th>3rd Conjugation Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fāma, -ae, f.</td>
<td>agō, agere, ēgī, actum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flamma, -ae, f.</td>
<td>agere dē (+ ablative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortūna, -ae, f.</td>
<td>grātiās agere (+ dative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuga, -ae, f.</td>
<td>vitam agere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grātia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>petō, petere, petivī, petītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vita, -ae, f.</td>
<td>crās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>crās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>heri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hodīe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|                               | do; drive; treat, deal with |
|                               | talk about, debate about |
|                               | give thanks, thank |
|                               | lead a life |
|                               | seek; ask for |

Exercise III

A.

1. Epistulae á tē scriptae délbuntur.
2. Longam vitam nōn sine multīs amīcīs ēgit.
4. Sociī invidiā ardentēs, grātiās nōbīs nōn agent.
5. Ego et tū equōs onera portātūrōs vīdimus.
6. Heri servī fūgērunt; hōdiē dominī fugiēntīs petunt.
7. Fuga puellārum atque servōrum mihi misera vidēbātur.*
8. Heri modo tū mihi dōna dedistī; hōdiē ego tibi grātiās agō; crās tibi amīcus erō.
9. Puerum multa agentem non vīdimus, nam in urbem fūgerat.
10. Tū et sociī tuī aut cum hostibus pugnābitis aut ā nōbīs fugiētis.
11. Dum nōmina deōrum sacra habēmus, eī nōbīs amīcī erunt.
12. Mihi dē tristī fortūnā omnium gentium á Rōmānīs victārum scrīpsistī.

*B The passive of videō, -ēre, vidi, visum, may mean “seem, appear.”

B.

1. Girls and boys do not lead the same life.
2. A good mind does not fear bad fortune.
3. The sailors, however, have fled because they have ships.
4. We will lead the horses carrying burdens out of the city.
5. Many things have been written about men seeking favor.
6. Yesterday they were all singing; today, however, they are asking for (their) life.
7. Today we seek fame, but tomorrow we will fear the envy of all our friends.
8. While the horses were wandering in the woods, the soldiers did not have hope of escape.
9. We not only saw fire destroying homes, but also flames burning on the mountains.
10. Because our minds were being directed (use tendō) towards small things, the teachers, moved by anger, punished us.
11. All the allies of the Romans will give thanks to us because we have waged many wars against the enemies of Rome.
Lesson IV

INFINITIVES

INFINITIVES are verbal nouns, which may be used as subjects or objects. They have tense and voice, but not person or number. They may take objects, or be modified by adverbs. A FINITE VERB has a personal ending; an infinitive has no personal ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>1st, 2nd and 4th conj.: present stem + -ri &lt;br&gt;3rd conj.: 2nd participal part minus -ere + -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>amāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monēri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>dūci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiere</td>
<td>audiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>to lead</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>perfect passive participle + -esse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvisse</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisse</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxisse</td>
<td>ductus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cépisse</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audívisse</td>
<td>auditus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisse</td>
<td>to have been led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>4th principal part (always -um) + īri</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>amātum īri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>monitum īri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūctūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>ductum īri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>captum īri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>auditum īri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>futūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>to be about to be led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE completes the meaning of another verb. Verbs of wishing, deciding, beginning, etc. and the passive forms of verbs of saying and thinking often take complementary infinitives.

Pugnāre cōnstituit. *He decided to fight.*
Pugnāvisse putātur. *He is thought to have fought.*

The infinitives of transitive verbs may take objects.

Nāvem mittere cōnstituit. *He decided to send a ship.*

In the future active and perfect passive infinitives, the participle, declined like bonus, -a, -um, agrees with the subject of the clause in case, number, and gender.

Nāvēs missae esse dicuntur. *The ships are said to have been sent.*

Puella epistulam scriptūra esse dicitur. *The girl is said to be about to write a letter.*
Vocabulary IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd Declension Nouns</th>
<th>Verbs taking a Complementary Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>locus, -i, m.place</td>
<td>putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. loca, locōrum, n.</td>
<td>cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma, -ōrum, n.</td>
<td>incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma capere</td>
<td>begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castra, -ōrum, n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Declension Noun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moenia, -ium, n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise IV

A.

1. Sociī bellum in hostēs parāre incipiunt.
2. Dum hostēs in castrīs sunt, omnia délēbantur.
3. Vīta mīlitis misera esse dīcitur, nam nōn longa est.
4. Moenia ex castrīs ad aquam dūcere incipiunt.
5. Audāx in rēbus difficilibus esse putātur.
6. Ego ā tē rogāta multās epistulās manū meā scrībam.
7. Territī sumus, nam tēla ardentia in nostrās nāvīs mittere cōnstituit.
8. Heri pīrātās pūnīre incēpisse putātus es, sed hodiē liberī sunt.
9. Fāma fugae eōrum ab hostibus audīta esse putātur.
10. Is ad bellum sociōrum ventūrus esse dicitur.
11. Eidem fratrēs ad Olympum tendentēs montem in monte pōnēbant.

B.

1. Huge waves were beginning to rise.
2. You will lead the frightened horse to that place.
3. The water is thought to be about to cover the fields.
4. They were beginning to carry water onto the ships.
5. The mountains stretching towards the sea are high.
6. You (pl.) have decided to give many gifts to your friends.
7. He had decided to conceal his bad intentions.
8. I was thought to have remained on the bridge with our allies.
9. Their queen is thought to have been sent to a guarded place.
10. Having been ruled by kings for many years, the city was wretched.
11. He was thought to have been loved by you, for you used to send messengers to his house.
12. We had begun to have hope because the teacher was teaching us many useful things.
Lesson V

REVIEW

begin thanks camp arms think walls have
envy decide yesterday horse flight for even
flame fire you (pl.) we the same you (sg.) enemy
either...or today mind that place life fortune
for while rumor drive tomorrow moreover territory
burn not only...but also seek ally end or

I. Replace the underlined words with is, ea, id and idem, eadem, idem.

1. Fīliam magistrī ad flūmen mīsī. 3. Puer grātiās agō. 5. Rēgīna invidiam de ārum timēbat.

II. Modify the underlined words with is, ea, id and idem, eadem, idem.

1. Fāmam audīvī. 3. In castrīs manēbimus. 5. Liber eius verba habet.

III. Translate all the pronouns into Latin. Use any necessary prepositions.

1. I will give you a present. 3. He was saved by them. 5. The girls were talking to us.
2. We will guard the city with you. 4. You and I saw the ghost. 6. The citizens praise you (pl.) and us.

IV. Translate the underlined participle phrases.

1. The soldier sitting on the horse wandered from the way. 4. They destroyed the camp set up in that place.
2. We carry the allies wounded with javelins into camp. 5. About to write a letter, my mother was sitting.
3. The horses, terrified by the flames, fled into the forest. 6. Rolling waves rose up because of the mighty wind.

V. Give the six infinitives of habeō and cōnstituō.

VI. Name the tense and translate the underlined infinitives.

1. The city is said to have been destroyed by fire. 4. The enemies are reported to have been seen.
2. Our allies were thought to be about to flee. 5. They decided to shelter the wounded.
3. This god is considered to be our ally. 6. He is said to have risen from the dead.
For Your Information

**COMPOUNDS OF *AGŌ***

Many verbs in Latin serve as bases to which prefixes are added to modify their meanings. One of these is *agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *actum* do; drive; treat, deal with.

- **cum + agō** = cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactum  
  *drive together, gather, force, compel*
- **ex + agō** = exīgō, exīgere, exēgī, exactum  
  *drive out*
- **re + agō** = redīgō, redīgere, redēgī, redactum  
  *drive back*

**Exercise V**

**A.**

1. Umbrae in silvis visae eōs terruērunt.
2. Prō sociīs meīs gratiās multās tibi agō.
4. Ea loca mihi tibique sacra habentur.
5. Rogātus librum tibi scribēbam.
6. Epistulam scribam, frāter enim meus eam accipere amābit.
7. Herī eōs equōs ē castrīs dūcere cōnstituimus, nam eī erant aegrī.
8. Mīlitēs ā tē missī fāmam nūntiāvērunt.
11. Hostēs nostrī, autem, nōs videntēs, eōsdem equōs cēpērunt.
12. Nōn modo flammīs, sed etiam aquis surgentibus moenia dēlēbantur.

**B.**

1. Voices announcing the end of the war were heard.
2. In the minds of many, anger and envy are similar.
3. His life is held dear by his many friends.
4. While the fires burn in the woods, we will save our houses.
5. But you (sg.), blazing with great anger, will fight with them.
6. The burning fires announced the evil deeds of the enemies.
7. Our soldiers, wounded by the weapons of the enemy, are beginning to flee.
8. You and Marcus were friends on all my journeys at that wretched time.
9. We decided to flee, for we had seen the enemy about to capture the ships.
10. Yesterday you were holding back your anger, but today you have taken up arms.
11. Many difficult things are thought to have been done on the same day.
12. We have decided to give thanks to the god of the city, for he has saved us.
Demonstratives may be used as adjectives or pronouns.

As an adjective, **hic, haec, hoc** agrees with the noun it modifies in case, number, and gender:

*Hic puer* **this boy**;  *huius mātris** **of this mother**;  *haec verba** **these words**

As a pronoun, **hic, haec, hoc** takes the number and gender of the noun it replaces:

*Hunc librum amō.*  **I love this book**.  →  *Hunc amō.*  **I love this (one)**.
*Hās epistulās mīsit.*  **He sent these letters**.  →  *Hās mīsit.*  **He sent these**.
*Haec verba audīvimūs.*  **We heard these words**.  →  *Haec audīvimūs.*  **We heard these (things)**.

### Formation of Adverbs

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. Adverbs do not decline.

1st / 2nd declension adjectives usually form adverbs by adding -ē to the stem:

altus, -a, -um **deep**

alt- → altē  **deeply**

aeger, aegra, aegrum **sick**

aegr- → aegrē  **painfully, with difficulty**

3rd declension adjectives often form adverbs by adding -iter to the stem; -er for adjectives ending in -ns; and -ter for audāx:

ācer, ācris, ācre **keen, sharp**

ācr- → ācriter  **keenly, sharply**

sapiēns, sapientis **wise**

sapient-→ sapienter  **wisely**

audāx, audācis **bold**

audāc- → audācter  **boldly**

The following adverbs are formed irregularly:

- **bonus, -a, -um** **good**  →  **bene**  **well**
- **malus, -a, -um** **bad**  →  **male**  **badly, poorly**
- **parvus, -a, -um** **small**  →  **parum**  **too little, not enough**
- **magnus, -a, -um** **great**  →  **magnopere**  **greatly**

A few adverbs are simply the accusative neuter singular or ablative neuter singular form:

- **primus, -a, -um** **first**  →  **primō**  **at first**
- **multus, -a, -um** **much, many**  →  **multum**  **much**
- **facilis, -e** **easy**  →  **facile**  **easily**

Adverbs not following these patterns will be given as vocabulary.
Vocabulary VI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>3rd Declension Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>well</td>
<td>hic, haec, hoc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longē</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>this, these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere</td>
<td>greatly</td>
<td>comes, comis, m. companion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum</td>
<td>much</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum</td>
<td>too little</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prīmō</td>
<td>at first</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aegrē</td>
<td>painfully; with difficulty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td>easily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise VI

A.

1. In hōc locō aegrē mānserant.
2. Hae sunt meae filiae amātæ.
3. Prīmō sociī nōbīs multās gratiās ēgērunt.
4. Hāc hōrā militēs fidem ducibus monstrāre constituunt.
5. Nōs nostraque facta parum laudātis, quod multum fēcimus.
6. Comitēs huius longē ā portā mānsisse dicuntur.
7. Prīmō haec omnia mihi ūtilia esse vīsa sunt.
8. Nōs dē hīs miserīs virīs rēgem interficere parantibus monuistī.
10. Hic socius ad mē ā nocte vēnit, quod eī hās epistulās mittere magnopere timēbam.
11. Mē multum amābunt, tēla enim cāpiēns ēorum urbem audacter servābō.
12. Equus īdem in agrō ā nōbīs visus ex hostium manibus fūgit.

B.

1. These are your (sg.) words.
2. These songs were sung well by our companion.
3. The master advised these slaves too little.
4. At first we thought you to be angry.
5. The soldiers will move the camp far from this river, (which is) rising much.
6. These books were badly prepared by your (sg.) companions.
7. We will accept these gifts, but we will not love you well on account of them.
8. They have decided to put these horns captured in war into my hands.
9. The farmers were thought to be about to fight keenly for (= on behalf of) their allies.
10. The inhabitants greatly feared to be captured by our soldiers.
11. This boy easily sees the wandering steps of his friend.
12. You (pl.) will not kill the king of this tribe, because he is said to be good and wise.
Lesson VII

READING: CONNECTED PROSE

When you began the study of Latin, you learned how to read aloud, translate, and write individual sentences. Sentences may combine to tell a story, persuade an audience, or express a sequence of ideas. Such combinations of sentences are called CONNECTED PROSE. Reading connected prose requires skills in addition to those that you have used in reading individual sentences. In reading connected prose, it is important to

• identify the GIST of a passage. The gist is the central idea of the passage.
• recognize KEY WORDS. Key words are the words that convey the most important elements of the passage.
• notice the connections between sentences and thoughts.
• guess the meaning of unfamiliar words and phrases.
• be sensitive to the order of thoughts in Latin. Try to understand Latin in the Latin order.

Chapters like this one will help you to develop and practice these skills.

Gist and Keywords

First of all, read through the passage out loud and in Latin, preferably two or three times. The objective is to understand the gist of the passage and to identify key words in it.

How do you get the gist of a passage?
As you read through, do not try to translate, but do look for clues.
• Does the passage have a title? Are there notes or a glossary to help you?
• Are there any proper nouns (capitalized words within a sentence)?
• Are any words repeated?
• Can you recognize any nominatives, accusatives, and verbs?

These questions will help you identify the key words in the passage. Proper nouns are likely to be the names of important people and places. Repeated words emphasize important elements that play a role in every part of the story. Nominatives, verbs, and accusative direct objects tell you who is doing what to whom.

The Story of Perseus

An oracle had predicted that King Acrisius of Argos would be killed by his grandson. When the king discovered that his daughter, Danaë, had given birth to a son, he tried to escape his fate by casting mother and son adrift in the sea. With the help of Jupiter, who was Perseus’ father, they landed safely on the island of Seriphos, where Perseus grew to manhood. King Polydectes of Seriphos then attempted to kill Perseus by sending him to bring back the head of the monster Medusa, one of the Gorgons. Perseus accomplished this dangerous task, and on the way back he rescued and married Andromeda, an Ethiopian princess. After many years he returned to Seriphos and revenged himself on Polydectes; he then went back to Argos and, in fulfillment of the oracle, killed his grandfather Acrisius by accident with a discus.
Vocabulary VII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>Conjunctions</th>
<th>Prepositions with the Accusative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nunc</td>
<td>antequam</td>
<td>ob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamen</td>
<td>igitur</td>
<td>propter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tum</td>
<td>postquam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tunc</td>
<td>afterwards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For all the readings, various vocabulary words will be translated in italics. Other words will be presented with English derivatives in parentheses from which you should try to deduce the appropriate English translation. Some compound verbs are shown divided into their elements in an effort to help you in recognition and translation.

1. The Family of Perseus


nārrō (1) (narrative, narrate)
Iuppiter, Iovis m. Jupiter
avus, -i m. grandfather
orāculum, -i n. oracle
comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum grasp, seize
adhūc, adv. to this point, yet, still
infāns, infantis m. / f. (infant, infantile)
arca, -ae f. chest, box
ligneus, -a, -um of wood, wooden

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus shut up in, enclose, imprison
coniciō, conicere, coniectum (conjecture) throw together, throw, cast, hurl
tempestās, tempestātis f. (tempestuous) weather, tempest, storm
turbō (1) (disturb)
sinus, -ūs m. embrace, bosom
dormiō, dormire, dormīvī, dormītum (dormitory, dormant)

dormiō, dormire, dormīvī, dormītum (dormitory, dormant)

2. Jupiter Saves His Son


tranquilīsus, -a,-um (tranquil)
insula, -ae f. (insular)
perduco = per + duco, bring
harēna, -ae f. (arena) sand
quiēs, quiētis f. (quiet)
piscātor, piscātōris m. fisherman

inveniō = in + veniō, come upon, find
addūcu = ad + duco, escort [lit. lead to]
sēdes, sēdis f. seat; abode
tūtus, -a, -um safe
libenter, adv. willingly, gladly
beneficium, -i n. kindness, service, benefit
Lesson VIII

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives have three DEGREES of comparison: POSITIVE, COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>longus, -a, -um</td>
<td>longior, longius</td>
<td>longissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>longer, rather / too long</td>
<td>longest, very long</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comparatives

The comparative is a two-termination 3rd declension adjective.

It is formed by adding -ior to the stem. For the neuter singular nominative and accusative, substitute -ius.

longus, -a, -um long longer, rather / too long
audāx, audācis bold audāc- → audācior, audācius bolder, rather/too bold

The comparative, unlike most 3rd declension adjectives, is not an i-stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>masculine / feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>longior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>longiōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>longiōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>longiōREM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>longiōRE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Superlatives

The superlative is normally formed by adding –issimus, -issima, -issimum to the stem of the adjective.

longus, -a, -um long long- → longissimus, -a, -um longest
audāx, audācis bold audāc- → audāciissimus, -a, -um boldest

The superlative is a 1st / 2nd declension adjective declined like bonus, -a, -um.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>longissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>longissimi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>longissimō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>longissimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>longissimō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comparison Constructions

Two nouns joined by quam (than) must be in the same case.

Servus est felicior quam rēx. The slave is happier than the king.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON - When quam is omitted from a comparison, the second of the two things compared is in the ablative case. This ablative construction is used only when the first of the two things compared is in the nominative or the accusative.

Servus est felicior rēge. The slave is happier than the king.
Exercise VIII

A.

1. Fuit ütilior in castrīs quam in urbe.
2. Propter invidiam eris miserior quam is.
3. Inter eos montēs longius iter facere incipiō.
4. Tunc omnēs bonī omnium generum erant nōbīscum.
5. Nunc dē virō audācissimō in exercitū hostium agimus.
6. Comitēs fortissimī ante ōs fluminis stābant.
7. Ob scelera magna, deī in caput eius multa mala posuērunt.
8. Antequam bellum cum eīs gentibus gerēbat, gratiās magnīs deīs ēgit.
9. Postquam servī territī lītora fūgērunt, ad urbem celeriter tendēbant.
10. Nōn vīta, sed somnus longissimus ā deīs nōbīs datus est.
11. Hae gentēs circum nōs sunt audāciōrēs mīlitibus trāns flūmen pugnantibus.
12. Multās per gentēs multaque per maria ductus, ad eum locum vēnī.

B.

1. Higher mountains were around our city.
2. The sweetest songs come from her mouth.
3. He came through those very bold tribes.
4. (There) is a bolder horse behind the gate.
5. The captured (people) are wiser than those free (people).
6. We now are waging a longer war than our allies have waged.
7. The god called the sailors with a great voice (use ōs, ōris).
8. He made a rather long journey around the mountains.
9. You will be punished, for your crimes seem very serious to all.
10. (There) is a longer river between the city and the mountains.
11. At that time, all my friends were of the same sort.
12. She was moved by his appearance rather than by his reputation.
Lesson IX

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The following common adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um</td>
<td>peior, peius</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>maior, maius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great</td>
<td>greater</td>
<td>greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>smaller</td>
<td>smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sg. plūs</td>
<td>sg. plūrēs, plūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much, many</td>
<td>pl. plūrimus</td>
<td>pl. plūrēs, plūra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adjectives Ending in -er**

Any adjective ending in -er in the masculine forms the comparative regularly, but forms the superlative irregularly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sacer, sacra, sacrum</td>
<td>sacrior, -ius</td>
<td>sacerrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holy</td>
<td>holier</td>
<td>holiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser, misera, miserum</td>
<td>miserior, -ius</td>
<td>miserrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unhappy</td>
<td>more unhappy</td>
<td>most unhappy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácer, ácris, ácre</td>
<td>acrior, -ius</td>
<td>ácerrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharp</td>
<td>sharper</td>
<td>sharpest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Six Adjectives Ending in -lis**

Six 3rd declension adjectives ending in –lis form their comparative regularly, but form their superlatives irregularly. Their superlative is formed by adding -limus, -lima, -limum to the stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facilis, facile</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easier</td>
<td>easiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e</td>
<td>difficilior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>more difficult</td>
<td>most difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>simillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>more like</td>
<td>most like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e</td>
<td>dissimilior, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unlike</td>
<td>more unlike</td>
<td>most unlike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e</td>
<td>gracilior, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slender</td>
<td>more slender</td>
<td>most slender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e</td>
<td>humilior, -ius</td>
<td>humilius, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>lowest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that other adjectives ending in -lis form their superlative regularly: ūtilis, ūtilior, ūtilissimus.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE - The degree or measure of difference in a comparison is expressed by the use of the ablative without a preposition.

Puella pede brevior est quam puer. *The girl is shorter than the boy by a foot.*

Mare multō altius est flūmine. *The sea is deeper than the river by much.*
Vocabulary IX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irregular Comparative Adjectives</th>
<th>Irregular Superlative Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maior, maius</td>
<td>greater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>smaller, less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peior, peius</td>
<td>worse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
<td>greatest, very great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
<td>best, very good, excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
<td>smallest, very small, least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
<td>worst, very bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plurimus, -a, -um</td>
<td>most, very many</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>2nd Declension Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e</td>
<td>oculus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e</td>
<td>pēs, pedis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e</td>
<td>foot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Exercise IX

A.

1. Pedēs tuī sunt maiōrēs meīs.
2. Est facillimum equōs per hanc portam dūcere.
3. Miserrima ab oculis eius fūgit.
4. Deīs deābusque maximās gratiās ēgimus.
5. Hic est similior mihi quam tibi.
7. Erat facilius vidēre tuīs oculīs quam meīs.
8. Tuum scelus est multō peius quam meum.
9. Tristissima fortūna tuī fratris optimī mē multum movēbat.
11. Postquam verba eius in castrīs audīta sunt, acerrimī militum eum laudāvērunt.
12. Dē hoc sacerrimē locō poētae multa dīxisse videntur.

B.

1. They saw very large fires in the mountains.
2. The very wretched man flees quickly from my eyes.
3. Those ships seem to me to be rather low in the water.
4. This place is much holier than your (pl.) city.
5. He has more slender feet than I have; your feet, however, are the most slender.
6. I was greatly moved by the very wretched appearance of that (man).
7. (While) preparing their weapons quickly, they saw the lights in the camp of the enemy.
8. I was very happy because all your (sg.) companions were very like you.
9. The waves of the sea were higher than the ships by many feet.
10. The messenger standing before your (sg.) eyes was sent by the king of the gods.
11. The man wandering at night is thought to have seen his mother among very many ghosts.
12. Your (sg.) teacher spoke very sad words to you about your friend (who was) going to make a rather difficult journey on behalf of (his) sick father.
Lesson X

REVIEW

Vocabulary VI - IX

minimus igitur ante humilis hic tum oculus
nunc maior gracilis melior antequam tunc
aegrē primō pessimus optimus tamen quem
pês plūrimus magnopere propter post postquam
ós inter parum genus dissimilis tunc
peior per dissimilis

this eye smallest then far therefore now
on account of because of before (prep.) well greater before (conj.) foot
after (prep.) around greatly kind mouth between through
too little low then smaller worst after (conj.) than less best at first
evertheless with difficulty crime better than companion most

dissimilar this

I. Modify the following nouns with **hic, haec, hoc**.

1. generibus 6. locō 11. ignem 16. equōs
2. pedēs 7. moenium 12. fāmae 17. fortūnā
3. capita 8. flammās 13. grātīās 18. vītae
5. scelera 10. sociīs 15. invidiae 20. finium

II. Identify case, number, gender of underlined words.

1. Comitēs **haec** dīxērunt.
2. **Hi** oculī ardent.
3. Oculī **hārum** īrā ardent.
4. **Eī** sunt fēlīciorēs quam **hī**.
5. **Hoc** flūmen est longius **eō**.

III. Form adverbs from the following adjectives:

1. sapiēns 6. ūtilis 11. ācer
2. malus 7. similis 12. bonus
3. aeger 8. irātus 13. magnus
4. altus 9. miser 14. ardēns
5. optimus 10. dulcis 15. fēlīx

IV. Form the comparatives and superlatives of the underlined adjectives.

1. montēs altī 4. malī sceleribus 7. comitis audācis
2. rēgīna pulchra 5. parvum genus 8. bonae mentī
3. hostium ācrium 6. fortūnam similēm 9. multa arma
For Your Information

The prefix dis- apart is used with many verbs, such as discēdō, depart and dimittō, send away.
It may also be a strong negative: dis + facilis easy = difficilis difficult
       dis + similis similar = dissimilis dissimilar

The prepositions ante and post occur in the abbreviations a.m. (ante merīdiem, before midday) and p.m. (post merīdiem, after midday). They are also commonly used as verb prefixes, as in postscribō, write after, add in writing from which we get the abbreviation p.s. (post scriptum, written after).

Exercise X

A.
1. Comitēs meī haec eīs nōn dīcent.
2. Hic locus mūnītissimus est.
3. Caesar nāvēs humiliōrēs celeriōrēsque fēcit quam hās.
4. Gracilīs pedēs meae amātae videō.
5. Cum dissimillimō patre vitam aegrē agebat.
6. Tunc graciliōr flamma circum caput eius ardēre visa est.
7. Nunc ob plūrima scelera tua amīcōs plūrimōs nōn habēs.
8. Propter minimōs ignēs ex his castrīs celeriter fugere cōnstituērunt.
9. Magnopere heri terrēbar; hodiē igitur inter hās silvās manēbō.
10. Ego arma capiēns, urbem ardentem fugere constituī.
11. Urbs surgentibus aquīs dēlēta mihi hāc parvā rē miserior vidētur.
12. Postquam ē domō tuā discesseram, tuī patris umbra ante meōs oculōs visa est.

B.
1. The gods will punish him because of his very many crimes.
2. All good (people) of all kinds will come happily into the city.
3. Before the gods had spoken, we were rather bold because of our good fortune.
4. After we had heard him speaking these sharp words, we were greatly afraid.
5. Before his foot was wounded, he was fleeing his enemies quickly.
6. (After I was) seen singing in the woods, I began to receive many gifts.
7. With my eyes I saw you (pl.) boldly saving the ships.
8. The dark land covered me because of (my) bad fortune.
9. We saw the ships burning on the shore after our leaders fled.
10. At that time your (sg.) works were much greater than ours.
11. After the worst (men) fled from the city, they remained in the mountains for very many days.
12. At first I had decided to remain; now, however, I shall make a journey happily among the tribes.
Lesson XI

DEMONSTRATIVES: ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD and ISTE, ISTA, ISTUD

Cause

ille, illa, illud that, those

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ille</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Demonstratives may be used as adjectives or as pronouns.

As an adjective, ille, illa, illud agrees with the noun it modifies in case, number, and gender:

ILLE puer that boy; illīus mātris of that mother; illa verba those words

As a pronoun, ille, illa, illud takes the number and gender of the noun it replaces:

Illum librum amō. I love that book. → Illum amō. I love that one.

Illās epistulās mīsit. He sent those letters. → Illās mīsit. He sent those.

Ilла verba audīvimus. We heard those words. → Illa audīvimus. We heard those things.

Ille is often used to contrast with hic:

Magister hunc puerum laudāvit, sed illum pūnīvit.
The teacher praised this boy, but punished that (one).

iste, ista, istud that of yours, those of yours (sometimes with contempt implied)

Iste, ista, istud is declined like ille, illa, illud.

Ista mala fugiēs. You will flee those evils (of yours).
Dux istōs pūnīvit. The leader punished those men.
Ad mē dē istō Marcō, amīcō tuō, scribis. You are writing to me about that Marcus, your friend.

Cause

Ob or propter with the accusative expresses cause or reason.

Ob verba laudābitur. She will be praised because of her words.
Propter flūmen cōnstitimus. We stopped on account of the river.

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE - The ablative without a preposition also expresses cause or reason.

Factīs pūnītur. He is punished for his deeds.
Tuīs operibus laudāris. You are praised for your works.
Vocabulary XI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Conjugation Verbs</th>
<th>Demonstratives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum</td>
<td>go out, depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incēdō, incēdere, incessī, incessum</td>
<td>go in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reliquō, reliquere, reliquī, relictum</td>
<td>leave, leave behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trahō, trahere, traxī, tractum</td>
<td>drag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum</td>
<td>live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ille, illa, illud</td>
<td>that, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iste, ista, istud</td>
<td>that, pl. those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sometimes with contempt implied)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XI

A.

1. In illum locum optimum incēdit.
2. Vivere est dulce mihi propter illum.
3. Illa moenia sunt altissima et longissima.
5. Illī gravēs sapientēsque virī erant īrātissimī.
6. Hoc opus difficillimum illus erit, quod eius amīcī heri excessērunt.
7. Illa dictūrī, surgere excēdereque incipiēbant.
8. Istīs īrā tēlīsque terrītī, in umbrās noctis fugiēmus.
9. Tū vivis fēlīcior quam ego; nōs autem vivimus fēlīciōrēs illīs.
11. Istā invidiā magnā mē dēlēbis.

B.

1. Those (people) lived for many years.
2. You departed from our allies’ land by means of ships.
3. That man seems happiest to me.
4. They saw the horse left behind on the shore by the enemies.
5. Those flames are much higher than the walls of the camp.
6. The same night the soldiers came out of that horse.
7. I saw the fires burning in our city and those men killing the citizens.
8. After we had departed from the city, we gave thanks to the gods.
9. We stopped in that place because you (sg.) had left behind those books.
10. We left our allies behind because of the very difficult journey.
11. They begin to drag the horse through the very well fortified gates.
12. The allies remained in that place, but you (pl.) left the camp quickly.
Lesson XII

READING: CONNECTING IDEAS

When you read a Latin passage, it is important to understand the Latin in its own word order. The pieces of a passage will be joined in a way that shows the flow of ideas. These ideas are usually connected to each other. One thought leads to the next.

In Latin, the connection between one thought and the next is usually signaled by

- connecting words; for example, conjunctions
- repetition of words
- punctuation; for example, commas or semicolons

Even when we physically separate the sentences of a paragraph, the connectedness remains. Here is a passage from Lesson VII divided into sentences with some connective signs italicized:

Comprehendit *igitur* Perseum adhūc infantem, *et* cum mātre in arcā ligneā inclūsit.

*Tum* arcam in mare coniēcit.

Danaē, Perseī *māter*, magnopere territa est; tempestās *enim* magna mare turbābat.

Perseus *autem* in sinū mātris dormiēbat.

What do these connecting devices do?

- *Igitur*, “therefore,” shows that the statement *comprehendit Perseum adhūc infantem* is a consequence of what has gone before.
- *Et* connects the two things that Acrisius did: *comprehendit et inclūsit*.
- *Tum*, “then,” shows that the event *arcam in mare coniēcit* follows the events of the preceding sentence.
- *Māter* repeats *cum mātre* in the first sentence and connects the sentence about Danaē to what has gone before.
- *Enim*, “for,” shows that *tempestās magna mare turbābat* explains the preceding statement that Danaē was frightened.
- *Autem*, “however,” calls our attention back to Perseus and contrasts his sleeping with his mother’s terror.

These signs help show the development of thought.

Note that signs of connection often introduce a grammatical piece which can be dealt with separately (a sentence or the clauses within a sentence). These connecting signs will help you to divide a passage into smaller, more manageable pieces.
3. Perseus Is Sent On His Travels


4. Perseus Gets His Outfit

Lesson XIII

IRREGULAR VERB: POSSUM, POSSE, POTUĪ; USES OF THE INFINITIVE

**possum, posse, potuī, — be able, can**

In the present system, **possum** is a compound of the verb **sum**.

The prefix is **pos**- when the form of **sum** begins with **s**.

The prefix is **pot**- when the form of **sum** begins with **e**.

In the perfect system the tenses are formed regularly.

Like **sum**, **possum** has no passive voice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>I can/able</td>
<td>poterō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes</td>
<td>you can</td>
<td>poterēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest</td>
<td>hēs/let can</td>
<td>poterēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possimus</td>
<td>we can</td>
<td>poterāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potestis</td>
<td>you can</td>
<td>poterātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possunt</td>
<td>they can</td>
<td>poterant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potui</td>
<td>I could</td>
<td>potuerēm</td>
<td>I will have been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potuisti</td>
<td>you could</td>
<td>potuerēs</td>
<td>you will have been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potuit</td>
<td>hēs/let could</td>
<td>potuerēt</td>
<td>hēs/let will have been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potuimus</td>
<td>we could</td>
<td>potuerāmus</td>
<td>we will have been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potuistis</td>
<td>you could</td>
<td>potuerātis</td>
<td>you will have been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potuērunt</td>
<td>they could</td>
<td>potuerant</td>
<td>they will have been able</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>(possum has no participles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Possum** is usually accompanied by a complementary infinitive.

_Ea scribere poterunt._ They will be able to write this.  
_Audire possumus._ We can hear.

**Accusative and Infinitive with iubeō and vetō**

Iubeō and vetō need both a person and an action to make their meaning clear. They govern an accusative

_Dux militēs urbem mūnire iussit._ The leader ordered the soldiers to fortify the city.  
_Magister discipulōs dicere vetat._ The teacher orders the students not to talk.

**Infinitive as Subject or Object**

The infinitive is a verbal noun. It is always neuter, always singular, and either nominative or accusative.

**Subject:** Dulce est vocem tuam audire. It is sweet to hear your voice. Hearing your voice is sweet.

**Object:** Cantāre amō. I like to sing. I like singing.
Vocabulary XIII

Verbs taking Infinitives | 2nd Declension Nouns
---|---
vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitum | order...not, forbid
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum | order, command, bid
possum, posse, potuī, — | can, be able

animus, -ī, m. | mind, spirit; in plural, bravery
discipulus, -ī, m. | student
umerus, -ī, m. | shoulder

Exercise XIII

A.
1. Poēta nōs verba deōrum audīre iussit.
2. Tandem in urbe sumus—nunc bene vivere poterimus!
3. Mīlitēs, tēlīs hostium vulnerātī, lūce lūnae fugere potuērunt.
4. Deus nōs vītam facilem agere vetat; igitur onera plūrima nōbīs dedit.
5. Dux enim nōs corpora hostium in castrīs relinquere vetuit.
6. Dux nōs in castrīs manēre iussit, sed miseriōrēs in eō locō quam in silvīs erimus.
7. Ā magistrō nōn pūniēmur; nemō enim nōs in mūrīs scrībentīs vīdit.
8. Virī bonī mēns in eōdem locō manet, et ille fortūnā malā vulnerārī nōn potest.
10. Nōn omnia (facere) possumus omnēs. (Vergil Eclogues 8.63)
11. Multī in urbem venīre nōn poterant, quod ille pons flūctibus dēlētus erat.
12. Discipulī pessimī, heri in hōc mūrō mala plūrima scrīpsistis; ego igitur vōs propter scelera vestra pūniēri iubēbō.

B.
1. Before the eyes of the sailors, the leader of the enemy could not flee with the queen.
2. We have in mind to leave behind arms in camp.
3. Yesterday (our) leader ordered (our) allies to send us horses.
4. The wise man can have a brave spirit and a good mind.
5. The leader orders the walls of the city not to be destroyed.
6. A poet (who has been) ordered to write will make bad songs.
7. While I was speaking about these things, my horse was able to wander into the road.
8. The soldiers are able to carry the same burdens (on their) shoulders.
9. While we live, we will be able to seek better things.
10. The brave soldiers had been forbidden to make a fire in the camp on account of the great wind.
11. We ordered the slave to drag the very great burden; he, however, left it behind because of his bad spirit.
12. Having been ordered by the teacher to write, the students stopped, sat (down), and began to write about things of all sorts.
Lesson XIV

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
<th>Third Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>meī of myself</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>mīhī to/for myself</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>mē myself</td>
<td>tībī to/for yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>mē (from) myself</td>
<td>tē (from) yourself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>nostrī of ourselves</td>
<td>vestrī of yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>nōbīs to/for ourselves</td>
<td>vōbīs to/for yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>nōs ourselves</td>
<td>vōs yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>nōbīs (from) ourselves</td>
<td>vōbīs (from) yourselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the third person reflexive is identical in the singular and the plural forms.

The reflexive pronoun cannot be in the nominative case.

It must have the same number, and gender as the subject.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Puer sē laudat.</td>
<td>The boy praises himself.</td>
<td>Puerī sē laudant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The preposition cum is regularly placed after and joined to the reflexive pronoun.

sēcum with himself/herself/itself/theirself

Sūi, sībi, sē, sē can often be translated simply as him, her, it, or them, referring to the subject.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pater filium ad sē vocat.</td>
<td>The father calls the son to him.</td>
<td>Pater filium sēcum dūcit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reflexive Possessive Adjectives and eius, eōrum, eārum

The REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE emphasizes the ownership of something by the subject of the main verb.

For the 1st person and 2nd person forms use the possessive adjectives learned earlier:

meus, -a, -um; tuus, -a, -um; noster, -tra, -trum; and vester, -tra, -trum.

The 3rd person reflexive possessive adjective is suus, -a, -um. It expresses possession by the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands. It agrees with the noun it modifies in case, number, and gender.

Māter filium suum vocat. The mother calls her (own) son.

When the possessor is not the subject of the clause, the reflexive adjective suus, -a, -um cannot be used.

Use the genitive form of is, ea, id (eius, eōrum, or eārum).

Māter filium eius vocat. The mother calls his (someone else's) son.

Pater filium eōrum vocat. The father calls their son.
### Vocabulary XIV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suī, sibi, sē, sē</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus, sua, suum</td>
<td>his own, her own, its own, their own</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension Noun (like miles)</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nēmō, nēminis, m.</td>
<td>no one, nobody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numquam</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe</td>
<td>often</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indeclinable Noun</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nihil, n.</td>
<td>nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semper</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise XIV

**A.**

1. Mīles sē in umerō vulnerāvisses vidētur.
2. Ego mē in aquā saepe vīdī.
3. Agricola suam domum et suōs agrōs semper amat.
4. Nēmō Rōmānus sē ab illō locō mōvit.
5. Antequam suōs comitēs interfēcit, ille nōbīs bonus vidēbātur.
7. Vōcem patris in silvis cantantis saepe audīvimus.
8. Iste comes semper sē esse optimum putat.
9. Ille plūrima sua amīcīs reliquit, hic nihil.
10. Ad illam urbem cōnstitistis quod incēdere nōn potuistis.
11. Hodiē ex suīs urbibus excēdentēs maximās gratiās deīs agunt.

**B.**

1. Those (men) were dragging the ships behind them from the shore.
2. You will be able to do nothing more useful for yourself.
3. We always have friends very similar to ourselves.
4. Having in mind to fight, they quickly took up their own arms.
5. I will leave behind nothing for myself, but all my possessions for my friends.
6. Because the road was long, we stopped at that city.
7. They decided to punish themselves seriously, because they had not been able to save (their) king.
8. At length out of all his (goods) he left behind these (things) for his son.
9. No one going into the enemy camp that night was captured.
10. I often seemed to myself to be either most wretched or most sick.
11. She thinks herself to be much better than those people.
12. Fleeing, he carried his father on his own shoulders out of the burning city.
Lesson XV

REVIEW

Vocabulary XI-XIV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>diū</th>
<th>ille</th>
<th>vetō</th>
<th>iubeō</th>
<th>suī</th>
<th>vivō</th>
<th>semper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>umerus</td>
<td>discipulus</td>
<td>excēdō</td>
<td>trahō</td>
<td>cōnsistō</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td>via</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incēdō</td>
<td>hīc</td>
<td>saepe</td>
<td>ubi</td>
<td>relinquō</td>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>nihil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus</td>
<td>iste</td>
<td>animus</td>
<td>nēmō</td>
<td>tandem</td>
<td>lūna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

drag | stop | often | way | live | for a long time | shoulder |
| student | always | finally | here | go in | where, when | his own |
| that | forbid | go out | leave behind | there | nothing | himself |
| that (of yours) | no one | spirit | be able | order | moon |

I. Give the forms of ille and iste to modify these nouns:

1. agricolā | 6. viae | 11. genera | 16. hostium
2. umerī | 7. lūnam | 12. ōris | 17. equōs
3. discipulōrum | 8. animōs | 13. scelus | 18. fortūnae
5. poenās | 10. comitis | 15. pedibus | 20. arma

II. Translate the underlined words or phrases, using forms of is or suī, and eius, cōrum, cārum or suus, as appropriate.

1. I saw his son. 8. He can't control himself. 15. He called himself king.
2. We praise her daughter. 9. They all defended themselves. 16. We defended their camp.
3. She praises her own daughter. 10. I will bring their books. 17. They brought it with them.
4. Caesar summoned his men. 11. She threw herself into the river. 18. He forgave his enemies.
5. I killed his assassin. 12. I called her. 19. He hurt his shoulder.
6. This boy was talking to himself. 13. They made him consul. 20. The doctor heals his shoulder.
7. Control them! 14. The general gave them orders. 21. They controlled themselves.

III. Write a synopsis of possum in the 3rd singular and 1st plural indicative active.

IV. Express each underlined phrase three ways.

1. They were imprisoned for their crimes.
2. She fled because of the fire.
3. He was praised on account of his wise words.

V. Translate.

1. Eōs pūnīre nōn possum. 4. Bonum est vītam bene agere.
2. Haec opera facere cōnsistī. 5. Ex urbe excēdere timeō.
For Your Information

Compounds often merge their two components by dropping or combining syllables.

**Possum** is a compound verb composed of the adjective **potis**, **able** and **sum**, **be**.

**Nēmō**, *no one*, is a compound noun composed of **nē**, **not** and **homō**, **person**, **human**.

**Nēmō** often uses forms of **nullus**, **-a**, **-um**, **no**, **none**, **not any** (Lesson XXIX) for the genitive singular (**nullīus**) and the ablative singular (**nullō** or **nullā**).

Exercise XV

A.

1. Gracile cornū lūnae ē mari surgens vidēre possum.
2. Postquam sibi omnia parāvērant, ā castrīs excēdere cōnstituērunt.
3. Iuppiter, postquam filium suum in finēs hostium mīsit, eum servāre cōnstituit.
4. In viā cōnsistere nōn possumus, hōc enim diē in urbem venire iussī sumus.
5. Iste vitam sceleribus sui pessimam per multōs annōs ēgit.
6. Finis huius librī est utīlissimus! Magister nōs iubet ibi haec verba petere.
7. Verba postquam ex ōre fūgērunt revocārī nōn possunt.
8. Sapiēns sē numquam laudat; eum igitur amīcī saepe laudant.
9. Hic in animō habet bona plūrima facere; ille, sclera multa.
10. Fortiter ille castra sua dēfenderat; tandem tamen ā duce iussus, per flammās tēlaque fūgit et sē servāvit.
11. Hic nēminem sapientiorem quam hōs discipulōs docuit, nam illī verba difficillima scribere possunt.
12. Omnēs oculīs nostrīs vidēre, mente cōnstituere, animīs fortēs esse possumus.

B.

1. All things remain in their (own) place.
2. The gods of the Romans gave wise words to all their poets.
3. After death the spirit and mind flee from the body.
4. Jupiter will save his own sons but not those of that unhappy (man).
5. The very sad book written by that poet will teach us about the queen.
6. We place all hope in horses, for without them we will not be able to flee.
7. (While they were) sitting in front of the eyes of the teachers, the students could not write very many bad things in the books.
8. No one can order that soldier not to drag his (own) burdens out of the burning ship.
9. Today these slaves carry the most burdens on (their) shoulders, but tomorrow those men will place the same things on the ships.
10. Because that man did very many crimes, the citizens finally ordered him to be punished severely.
11. We cannot stop in the same place, for the master has ordered us to make a very long journey.
12. The citizens, punished by the wrath of gods and goddesses, were ordered to destroy their own city.
Lesson XVI

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

The RELATIVE PRONOUN introduces an ADJECTIVE CLAUSE which modifies a noun or pronoun in the previous clause.

Qui, quae, quod who, which, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>who, which, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
<td>quārum</td>
<td>quārum</td>
<td>whose, of whom/which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quēm</td>
<td>quām</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>to/for whom/which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quās</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>whom, which, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>by/with/from whom/which</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word to which the relative pronoun refers is called its ANTECEDENT.

THIRD RULE OF CONCORD - The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in number and gender. The case of the relative pronoun is determined by its use in its own clause.

Urbēs quae captae sunt dēlēbuntur. The cities which have been captured will be destroyed.

The antecedent urbēs is plural and feminine; therefore the relative pronoun quae is plural and feminine.

Quae is the subject of captae sunt and is therefore nominative.

Urbēs quās cēpimus dēlēbuntur. The cities which we have captured will be destroyed.

The antecedent urbēs is plural and feminine; therefore the relative pronoun quas is plural and feminine.

Quās is the direct object of cēpimus and is therefore accusative.

Puerum cuius vōcem audīvī nōn videō. I do not see the boy whose voice I heard.

The antecedent puerum is singular and masculine; therefore the relative pronoun cuius is singular and masculine. Cuius shows possession of vōcem and is therefore genitive.

Hae sunt puellae quibus librōs dedī. These are the girls to whom I gave the books.

The antecedent puellae is plural and feminine; therefore the relative pronoun quibus is plural and feminine.

Quibus is the indirect object of dedī and is therefore dative.

Vir, dē quō dīcēbāmus, erat dux noster. The man, about whom we were speaking, was our leader.

The antecedent vir is masculine and singular; therefore the relative pronoun quō is masculine and singular.

Quō is the object of the preposition dē, and is therefore ablative.

Cum with the Relative Pronoun

As with personal and reflexive pronouns, the preposition cum becomes enclitic when used with the relative pronoun.

Amīcī meī, quibuscum contendēbatis, vōs laudant. My friends, with whom you were competing, praise you.
Vocabulary XVI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>3rd Declension Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quī, quae, quod</td>
<td>who, which, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agmen, agminis, n.</td>
<td>column (of men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūmen, lūminis, n.</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Conjugation Verbs</th>
<th>3rd Declension Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contendō, contendere, contendī, —</td>
<td>make effort, strive, compete; hurry; march</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>défendō, défendere, défendī, défensum</td>
<td>defend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum</td>
<td>conquer, defeat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XVI

A.

1. Nauta, quī suam nāvem amat, semper fēlix erit.
2. Nēmō Rōmānus ab illō locō, quem défendere iussus erat, sē mōvit.
3. Mīles, qui in agmine mànsit, cum hostibus audacter contendet.
4. Īra nōn eum, qui bonum animum habet, vincet.
5. Vōcem patris, qui semper cantābat, saepe audīvimus.
6. Fīdēs in omnium animōs lūmen suum mittit.
7. Lūminibus, quae in manibus portāmus, viās vidēre possumus.
8. Cōnstitistis ante illam urbem in quam incēdere nōn potuistis.
9. Fēlix est quī cum hostibus contendere potest et nōn vinci.
10. Nēminem, cuius fīdēs est maior quam tua, vidi.
11. Ille, quī suōs comitēs interfēcit, vōbīs optimus esse vīsus erat.
12. Ātrae aquae flūminis surgentis omnia ā civibus fugientibus relicta sēcum trāxerant.

B.

1. We will hurry to those places which we have fortified well.
2. The moon, rising from the mountains, will show the way for us.
3. The lights, which had been left behind, showed the way for us.
4. We were conquered by the words of that man who was with us at that time.
5. At length the army which had been in the mountains was conquered by us.
6. I will be sent from Italy because of your deeds, about which we all have heard.
7. After many disasters he finally began to call his friends to himself.
8. Those people, who had been left in the city, strove keenly.
9. I will give you the life which you have asked from me.
10. They were defended by the same soldiers who had defeated us.
11. You, who have always been a friend to me, will not defend me, will not praise me, will not save me.
12. The words which have been written by that poet are better than these.
Lesson XVII

READING
One Thing at a Time

Once you have the gist of a passage, you can begin to build up its meaning in detail, one word, phrase, clause, or sentence at a time. The connecting devices that you began to notice in Lesson XII help to divide a long passage into phrases and clauses. Deal with these shorter pieces one at a time.

Take, for example, the sentence

_Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscidere; eius enim conspectū hominēs in saxum mūtabantur._

Notice the postponed conjunction _enim_. This connecting device joins two clauses, each with its own finite verb (_erat_ and _mūtabantur_).

Within each clause, look at each word as it occurs in the Latin.
- Do you recognize it?
- How does it function?

Do not go on to the second clause until you have understood the first.

- _Rēs_ “thing, matter” could be nom. sing., nom. pl., or acc. pl.
- _difficillima_ “very difficult” must be nom. sing; therefore _rēs_ is also nom.sing.
- _erat_ “it was”
- _caput_ “head” could be nom. sing. or acc. sing.
- _Gorgonis_ proper noun
- _abscidere_ infinitive: “to ______”; _caput_ could be its object.

What you know so far gives:

- a thing very difficult / it was / head of a Gorgon / to ______.

Check the vocabulary list for the meaning of _abscidere_:

- a thing very difficult it was head of a Gorgon to cut off.

If you want to translate this paraphrase into English, you will have to put the adjective phrase “very difficult” before its noun and use one of the normal English ways of expressing subject infinitives:

- It was a very difficult thing to cut off the head of a Gorgon.
- Cutting off a Gorgon's head was a very difficult matter.

Note that sentences can be divided into clauses and phrases which are grammatical pieces to be dealt with separately as you move through a passage. In the next reading chapter we will discuss these more fully.
### Vocabulary XVII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Conjunctions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>homō, hominis, <em>m.</em></td>
<td>human, man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saxum, -i, <em>n.</em></td>
<td>rock, stone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virgō, virginis, <em>f.</em></td>
<td>maiden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atque</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Conjugation 1-stem Verb</td>
<td>Adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspiciō, inspicere, inspēxi, inspectum</td>
<td>look into or upon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statim</td>
<td>immediately, at once</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5. The Gorgon’s Head


| abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum | cut away or off               |
| cōnspectus, -ūs *m.*         | sight                        |
| mútō (1)                     | change, transform            |
| causa, -ae *f.* cause, reason|
| tergum, -i *n.* back         |
| vertō, -ere, vertī, versum   | turn                         |
| modus, -i *m.* way, manner   |
| ūnus, -a, -um (unit, unify)  |
| ictus, -ūs *m.* strike, blow |
| excītō (1) ouse, awaken      |
| volēbant (irregular) they wanted |

### 6. The Sea Serpent


| offendō, -ere, -di, -sum (offense) |
| cōtīdiē daily                      |
| dēvorō (1) (devour) swallow, devour|
| pavor, -ōris *m.* terror, panic    |
| occupō (1) (occupy) seize, fill    |
| vātēs, vātīs *m.* see; prophet     |
| cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -tum (consult) |
| trādō, -ere, -dīdi, -dītum = trāns + dō |
| dolor, -ōris *m.* (condolence) pain, grief |
| sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsum (sentiment) perceive, feel |
| optō (1) (option) desire           |
| periculum, -i *n.* danger, peril   |
| extrahō = ex + trahō               |

35
Lesson XVIII

DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent verbs are mostly passive in form and active in meaning. They have only three principal parts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Parts</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st conjugation</td>
<td>cōnor</td>
<td>I try</td>
<td>cōnātus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd conjugation</td>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>I fear</td>
<td>verērus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd conjugation</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>I follow</td>
<td>secūtus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-stem</td>
<td>patior</td>
<td>I experience</td>
<td>passus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th conjugation</td>
<td>mentior</td>
<td>I lie</td>
<td>mentitus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synopsis of sequor, sequī, secūtus sum

Principal parts are in red.
Active forms are on the left. They are exceptions to the rule that deponents are passive in form.

INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>secūtus, -a sum</td>
<td>secūtus, -a eram</td>
<td>secūtūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sequēns, -ntis</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um</td>
<td>secūtūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sequī</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Although Latin has a passive form for the future infinitive (e.g., amātum īrī), deponent verbs use the active form.

Statim hominēs sequī cōnātus est. He tried to follow the men immediately.
Matrī mentīta labōrēs patiētur. Having lied to (her) mother, she will endure hardships.
Medūsam verentēs fūgimus, illī autem mortuī sunt. Fearing Medusa, we fled, but they died.
Vocabulary XVIII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deponent Verbs</th>
<th>1st conjugation</th>
<th>2nd conjugation</th>
<th>3rd conjugation</th>
<th>3rd conjugation I-stem</th>
<th>4th conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum</td>
<td>try, attempt</td>
<td>vereor, verērī, veritus sum</td>
<td>fear</td>
<td>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum</td>
<td>follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lābor, lābī, lapsus sum</td>
<td>slip, collapse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morior, morī, mortuus sum</td>
<td>die</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patior, patī, passus sum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>endure, suffer, experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mentior, mentīrī, mentitus sum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lie, tell a lie</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XVIII

A.

1. Hominēs quī mentiuntur saepe errant.
2. Rōmānī deōs verēbantur, deī enim eōs in bellō saepe servāvērunt.
4. Militēs, quī multa passī sunt, in agmine moriēntur.
5. Quī bellō multa passus est ad Italiam vēnit.
6. Vōbis quī graviōra patiminī deus etiam hīs finem dabit.
7. Ignis ā Iove missus discipulum quī semper mentiēbātur interfēcit.
8. Ā duce iussī equum ingentem in urbem trahere cōnābāmur.
10. Errāvit, lapsus est, nōn putāvit. (Cicero, For Ligarius 30)
11. Verba sapientium nōn mortua sunt, nam in illis multa bona atque ūtilia vidērī possunt.
12. Is autem, quī semper bona facere cōnātus, mala tamen ā malīs plūrima patitur.

B.

1. It doesn’t follow; we will try; they were enduring; I will not die.
2. Fearing; to fear; to be about to slip; having followed.
3. A boy who lies often will be punished.
4. He has followed that road which we wish to follow.
5. The wounded soldier was trying to rise, but he was not able.
6. I will not lie to the men whom you have sent to me.
7. The consuls will be ordered to look into these laws.
8. (Those) who strive to defeat (their) enemies often suffer very difficult things.
9. The messenger of the gods often slips into our sleep and warns us.
10. Students look into these books, in which many good (things) have been written.
11. In your light we will not fear the shadows of the mind or the evil intentions of our enemies.
12. Caesar will march with his soldiers into the enemies’ territory; they will try to capture their cities.
Lesson XIX

IRREGULAR VERBS: FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUM

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum carry, bring, bear, endure

The verb ferō is irregular in the present tense. Otherwise, it is conjugated like a regular 3rd conjugation verb.

**PRESENT STEM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>ferō I carry</td>
<td>feror I am carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers* you carry</td>
<td>ferris* you are carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert* hel/esh/it carries</td>
<td>fertur* hel/esh/it is carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferimus we carry</td>
<td>ferimur we are carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fertis* you carry</td>
<td>ferimini you are carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferunt they carry</td>
<td>feruntur they are carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>ferēbam I was carrying</td>
<td>ferēbar I was being carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>feram I will carry</td>
<td>fera I will be carried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note that in the irregular forms, the ending is added directly to the stem without a connecting vowel.

**PERFECT STEM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>tulī I carried / have carried</td>
<td>lātus, -a sum I was / have been carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>tuleram I had carried</td>
<td>lātus, -a eram I had been carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>tulerō I will have carried</td>
<td>lātus, -a erō I will have been carried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>ferēns, -ntis</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>having been carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>about to carry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>ferre to carry</td>
<td>ferri* to be carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>tulisse to have carried</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um esse to have been carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um esse to be about to carry</td>
<td>lātum īrī to be about to be carried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note the double r.

**Ablative of Manner**

The manner or way in which an action is done is expressed by the preposition cum with the ablative.

- *cum laude* with praise
- *cum cūrā* with care = carefully

An adjective modifying the object often precedes the preposition. With an adjective, *cum* may be omitted.

*Magnā cum cūrā scribit.*

*Magnā cūrā scribit.*
Vocabulary XIX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Declension Nouns</th>
<th>Irregular Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cūra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>care, concern, worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lacrima, -ae, f.</td>
<td>tear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poena, -ae, f.</td>
<td>punishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poenās dare</td>
<td>pay the penalty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum</td>
<td>carry, bring, bear, endure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referō, referre, rettulī, relātum</td>
<td>bring back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension Nouns</th>
<th>Conjunction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labor, labōris, m.</td>
<td>ut (+ indicative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.</td>
<td>as, when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furor, furōris, m.</td>
<td>Adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poenās dare</td>
<td>vix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scarcely, hardly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XIX

A.

1. Fertur; ferar; ferēbātis.
2. Lāta sum; relātae erunt; rettulērunt.
3. Referre; tulisse; lātūra.
4. Hunc labōrem fortiter tulisti, ut tuus dux mihi nūntiāvit.
5. Cōnsul sēcum librōs ferre cōnstituit.
6. Plurimi labōrēs maximam curam ferunt.
7. “Sunt lacrimae rērum,” ut poēta dīxit. (Vergil, Aeneid 1. 462)
8. Heri sociī nostrī arma ad nōs ferēbant.
9. Ista verba cum furōre dicta ex ore tuō excēdēbant.
10. Antequam hodiē vēnit, in hanc urbem nōn pedem tulerat.
11. Illī agrī bonam fortūnam eīs, qui eōs accēperint, ferent.
12. Ea, quae in illis gentibus ferre nōn potest, in sē potest.

B.

1. They are carried; you will be carried; I was bearing.
2. You (sg.) will have borne; to have been carried; to be about to endure.
3. We will try to bring back great stones from the shore on our shoulders.
4. He wrote his books about war with great hatred and anger.
5. Those laws were passed (use ferō) before they were written.
6. I am unable to endure his jealousy; I will not hold (back) my tears.
7. Now they carry rocks from the river to the land.
8. He has been wounded in his foot with a weapon, but tears do not follow.
9. The consul was carried back to his native land with his soldiers by ships.
10. Brought back into her home with great care, she died the next night.
11. On account of the many crimes in the city, they will pay the greatest penalty.
12. On account of the anger of the gods, men are said to be suffering many wretched hardships.
Lesson XX

REVIEW

Vocabulary XVI-XIX

cūra  vix  ut (+ indicative)  vincō  quī  vereor
cōnor  statim  lacrima  inspiciō  atque  furor
virgō  referō  sequor  cuius  homō  ferō
cac  mentior  atque  morior  agmen
lūmen  lābor  saxum  patior  poenās dare  labor
çonuls  poena

punishment  light  who  and  conquer  slip
maiden  and  look upon  bear  hasten  tear
fear  whose  column (of men)  as  scarcely try
at once  rock  follow  allow  human  lie
die  care  rage  bring back  which  hardship
consul  pay the penalty

I. Combine each pair of sentences by using a relative clause.
   2. Virgō pedēs habet. Virgō sequī potest.
   5. Ille erat socius. Illī equum meum dedī.
   10. Iste homō est malus. Iste semper mentītur.

II. Review the Ablative of Comparison (Lesson VIII), the Ablative of Degree of Difference (Lesson IX), the
    Ablative of Cause (Lesson XI) and the Ablative of Manner (Lesson XIX). Translate the underlined phrases and
    name the use of the ablative.
   1. That mountain is many feet higher than this one.
   2. The poet has spoken with much hatred.
   3. The maiden is much angrier than her mother.
   4. Because of her anger she will be punished.
   5. He will be admired for his bold deeds.
   6. The king is shorter than the queen.
   7. Because of their fires the enemy was seen.
   8. Her sisters were burning with envy.
   9. He is much wiser than I am.
   10. He shouted with great rage.

III. Write the following synopses:
    vereor: 2nd plural masculine.
    patior: 1st plural feminine.
    ferō: 3rd plural masculine.

   vereor: 2nd plural masculine.
   patior: 1st plural feminine.
   ferō: 3rd plural masculine.

IV. Identify the conjugation, person, number, tense, mood and voice and translate the following verbs.
   1. cōnāris  5. I will follow.  9. fertur  13. following
   2. morientur  6. You (pl.) suffered. 10. referr  14. to have lied
   3. verēmur  7. They were dying. 11. patī  15. we, about to die
   4. lapsus eram  8. He will have lied 12. verēns  16. It had collapsed.
FOR YOUR INFORMATION

Compounds of FERŌ and SEQUOR

Here are some of the compounds of ferō carry, sequor follow.

Note how the prefix often changes form for ease in pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cum + ferō</td>
<td>conferō, conferre, contuli, collātum</td>
<td>bring together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in + ferō</td>
<td>inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum</td>
<td>introduce; cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per + ferō</td>
<td>perferō, perferre, pertuli, perlātum</td>
<td>endure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum + sequor</td>
<td>cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum</td>
<td>pursue; result from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in + sequor</td>
<td>insequor, insequī, insequūs sum</td>
<td>follow after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per + sequor</td>
<td>persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum</td>
<td>be in hot pursuit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XX

A.

1. Nōn omnis moriar. (Horace, Odes 3.30.6)
2. Brevī tempore cūram omnem relīquisse vidēbimur.
3. Omnī meā curā et meō labōre urbs servāta est.
4. Prīmō vidēre nōn potuī, sed servus lūmen ad mē tulit.
5. Illius vita erit multīs hōris brevior quam huius (vīta).
6. Ille mātrem fugientem miserā vōce secūtus est.
8. Tua fāma semper nōn parva per omnīs terrās ferētur.
9. Navis nostra in saxa iam lata est—aut in marī moriēmur aut nōs ad ōram illam referēmus.
10. Mīlitēs quī nōs secuti sunt hostēs esse nōn videntur, arma enim eōrum nōstrīs similia sunt.
11. Multa dona multīs rettulistī; nēmō autem meliora omnibus dedit.
12. Quī furōrem deōrum fortiter ferre potest vix invidiam hominum verēbitur.

B.

1. Either we will die fighting bravely or we will conquer.
2. The men who did not defend the city will pay the penalty.
3. I will do those things which I am able to do.
4. Roman soldiers bore many hardships, as they had been ordered.
5. They conquer who cannot be conquered.
6. Poets, to whom the light of the stars is dear, sing many songs in the night happily.
7. Because we have carried many burdens, in a short time we will have slipped into sleep.
8. We were beginning the task with rage, but we were striving with care.
9. We strive to seek the nearest shores, and we bring the ships to the land which the sailors saw.
10. You will be ordered to strive by means of war, and you will not often be defeated.
11. Ordered by Caesar to march much more swiftly, the Roman armies came at first light to enemy territory.
12. They are suffering many (things) in the column; nevertheless, the soldiers follow the leader because of loyalty.
Lesson XXI

IRREGULAR VERBS: VOLŌ, NÔLŌ, MÂLŌ

Volō, velle, voluī, — wish, want, be willing
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — not wish, be unwilling
Mâlō, mâlle, mâluī, — wish more, prefer

These three verbs are irregular in the present tense. Otherwise, they are conjugated like regular 3rd conjugation verbs. They have no passive forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOLŌ</th>
<th>NÔLŌ</th>
<th>MÂLŌ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT SYSTEM</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>I wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>you wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>he wishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>we wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>you wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>they wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>I was wishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam</td>
<td>I will wish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| PERFECT SYSTEM | | |
| Perf. | volūi | I have wished | nōluī | I have not wished | māluī | I have preferred |
| Plup. | volueram | I had wished | nōlueram | I had not wished | mālueram | I had preferred |
| F. Perf. | voluerō | I will have wished | nōluerō | I will not have wished | māluerō | I will have preferred |

| PARTICIPLES | | |
| Pres. | volēns, -ntis | wishing | nōlēns, -ntis | not wishing | — | — |
| Perf. | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| Fut. | — | — | — | — | — | — |

| INFINITIVES | | |
| Pres. | velle | to wish | nōlle | to wish not | mâlle | to prefer |
| Perf. | voluisse | to have wished | nōluisse | to have wished not | mâluisse | to have preferred |
| Fut. | — | — | — | — | — | — |

Volō, nōlō, and mâlō are usually accompanied by complementary infinitives.

Ille puer epistulam scribere nōlēbat. That boy was not willing to write a letter.
Audire quam dicere mālunt. They prefer to listen rather than to talk.
Quod vīs, facere nolō. What you want I am not willing to do.

The following verbs of wishing, trying, deciding, beginning, fearing, being able, etc. may take a complementary infinitive:

cônor  mâlō  tendō  in the passive:
côstituō  nōlō  timeō  dicor
contendō  parō  vereor  putor
incipiō  possum  volō  videor
Vocabulary XXI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4th Declension Nouns</th>
<th>Irregular Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fructus, ūs, m.</td>
<td>enjoyment, profit, fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ictus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>blow, strike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senātus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>senate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūsus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>use, application, practice; skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālō, mālle, māluī</td>
<td>prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlō, nōlle, nōluī</td>
<td>not wish, not want, be unwilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō, velle, voluī</td>
<td>wish, want</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XXI

A.

1. Volunt nōs sequī, sed nōlumus.
2. Excēdentēs ex urbe nōn vidērī mālunt.
3. Māvīs esse liber, quam magnus.
5. Velle et mālle nōn sunt eadem.
6. Agricola fructūs labōrum suōrum vidēre vult.
7. Mālō dominum bonum habēre; ictūs patī nōlō.
8. Id dicere noluī; “mihi” dicere voluī, tamen “huic” dixī.
9. Quod fēcisti senātus laudāvit.
10. Haec dōna tibi dō ad tuum ūsum frūctumque.
11. Quī in senātū sapiens habērī vult, nōn plūrima dīcit.
12. Īra populi in illōs ferēbātur, quod mala agēbant.
13. Illae gentēs magnum ūsum in armīs habēbant, quod multōs annōs inter sē contenderant.

B.

1. We do not all prefer to be praised.
2. I can follow, but I prefer to lead.
3. He wishes to be feared rather than loved.
4. They wish to have the use and enjoyment of their (own) fields.
5. We preferred to make the journey on foot.
6. Fortune wished to give us better things.
7. They wish to carry back all the gifts which they received.
8. You don’t wish to fight, for you fear the strikes of the javelins.
9. The words which the poet wanted to write, the senate did not want him to write.
10. I do not want you to lie to the queen, for she considers you most dear.
11. He doesn’t want to live his life badly, for his mother has taught him to do good (things).
12. They were always suffering either blows or falls, when they were following the very fierce leader.
Lesson XXII

READING
Dividing the Sentence (1)

In Lesson XVII you learned to read each word as it occurs in Latin and to pause at the end of a group of words. Before you translate and before you check the vocabulary list, look at how the sentence can be divided into groups. This lesson and the next reading lesson discuss how to recognize what words go together in a sentence.

In Latin, a sentence may consist of a single word: Dixit, “He said.” Usually, however, sentences consist of groups of words.

- **A PHRASE** is a group of related words not containing a subject and predicate.
- **A CLAUSE** is a group of words containing a subject and predicate.
  - The **MAIN CLAUSE** contains the main verb and is the grammatical core of the sentence.
  - A **SUBORDINATE CLAUSE** depends upon the rest of the sentence. It cannot stand alone.

**Recognizing Clauses**

The **connecting devices** that you began to notice in Lesson XII help to divide a long passage into clauses. They stand at or near the beginning of a clause. **Verbs** often mark the end of a clause:

Andromeda, ubi ea diēs vēnit, ad litus dēducta est et in cōnspectū omnium ad saxum adligāta est. Fātum eius omnēs dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēre poterant.

Read one clause at a time. If you are translating, do not move outside the boundaries of a clause until you have translated every word inside them.

Connecting devices will often be conjunctions, which by definition join or connect in some way. Conjunctions may mark new clauses.

- **SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS** connect a subordinate clause to the rest of the sentence:
  - quod, dum, postquam, ubi, ut

- **COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS** connect similar clauses or phrases:
  - et, sed, ac, atque, aut, autem, enim, nam, nec, neque, tamen

Sometimes a **subordinate clause** may be nested inside another clause:

Andromeda, ubi ea diēs vēnit, ad litus dēducta est.
7. The Human Sacrifice


certus, -a, -um (certain)
dēdūcō = dē + dūcō
dēligō (1) tie, bind
déplōrō (1) lament, mourn
exspectō = ex + spectō (1) wait for
accusō = ad + currō
fremitus, -ūs m. roar, groan, rumble
prōgressus sum march or go forward, advance
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum approach, come up to

8. The Rescue

Lesson XXIII

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Any statement can be expressed directly or indirectly. INDIRECT STATEMENTS are introduced by verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, telling, perceiving, and showing.

Direct: Your father is leading. Direct: The girl is being advised.
Indirect: I say that your father is leading. Indirect: She sees that the girl is being advised.

In English, an indirect statement is usually introduced by the conjunction “that” and is followed by a subordinate clause with its own subject and finite verb.

Accusative and Infinitive of Indirect Statement

In Latin, an indirect statement uses an accusative subject and an infinitive verb in place of a nominative subject and a finite verb. No conjunction introduces the subordinate clause; the English conjunction “that” is not expressed in Latin.

 DICŌ patrem tuum iam dúcere. I say that your father is already leading.
Putās puellam monēri. You think that the girl is being advised.

The accusative and infinitive construction is a NOUN CLAUSE and usually functions as a direct object to a transitive verb.

Direct Object: Puellam videt. She sees the girl.
Accusative and Infinitive: Puellam legere videt. She sees that the girl is reading.

Tense of the Infinitive in Indirect Statement

The tense of the infinitive retains the tense of the verb of the direct statement.

If the verb of the direct statement is present, the tense of the infinitive will be present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT STATEMENT</th>
<th>INDIRECT STATEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pater dúcit.</td>
<td>Dicit patrem dúcere. He says that his father is leading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella monētur.</td>
<td>Dicit puellam monēri. He says that the girl is being advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His father is leading.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The girl is advised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the verb of the direct statement is future, the tense of the infinitive will be future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT STATEMENT</th>
<th>INDIRECT STATEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pater dúcet.</td>
<td>Dicit patrem ductūrum esse. He says that his father will lead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella monēbitur.</td>
<td>Dicit puellam monitum ēri. He says that the girl will be advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His father will lead.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The girl will be advised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the verb of the direct statement is imperfect, perfect or pluperfect, the tense of the infinitive will be perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT STATEMENT</th>
<th>INDIRECT STATEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pater dúxit.</td>
<td>Dicit patrem dúxisse. He says that his father led.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella monēbatur.</td>
<td>Dicit puellam monitam esse. He says that the girl was advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His father led.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The girl was advised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the future active and perfect passive infinitives, the participle agrees with the accusative subject of the infinitive in case, number, and gender:

 Dicit patrem ductūrum esse. He says that his father will lead.
 Dicit puellam monitam esse. He says that the girl was advised.
Vocabulary XXIII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Conjugation Verb</th>
<th>2nd Declension Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>legō, legere, lēgī, lectum</td>
<td>aurum, -ī, n. gold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick out, choose, read</td>
<td>caelum, -ī, n. sky, heavens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fātum, -ī, n. fate</td>
<td>ferrum, -ī, n. iron; sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperium, -ī, n. power, rule</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XXIII

A.

1. Dīcō cōnsulem venīre; dīcis cōnsulem ventūrum esse; dīcit cōnsulem vēnisse.
2. Dīcimus ferrum bonum esse; dīcitis aurum melius esse; dicunt aquam optimam semper fuisse.
3. Audit mīlitēs vincere; audit mīlitēs vicisse; audit mīlitēs victūrōs esse.
4. Videō hostēs vincī; vidēmus hostēs victōs esse; vidētis hostēs victum īrī.
5. Fātum urbis à dei consistiūtūr.
6. Vidēmus cōnsulēs ex urbe excessisse.
7. Putat invidiam eōrum ferrī nōn posse.
8. Imperium nōn ferrō sed verbīs tenērī potest.
10. Multī dīcunt caelum domum deōrum esse.
11. Cōnsul cernit mentem istīus malam fuisse.
12. Ego dīcō aurum melius esse ferrō; tū autem ferrum māvīs.
13. Dīcunt senātum hanc rem ad cōnsulēs relātūrum esse.

B.

1. We think that the students are shouting.
2. They think that these students are best.
3. You say that we all prefer gold.
4. We think that she will pay the penalty.
5. You think that the students have shouted.
6. We think that those students will be best.
7. I read that he did not want power.
8. He will say that this was his fate.
9. You hear that the sailors are shouting and are running from the ships.
10. The consul sees that that man has come into the senate.
11. I think that my friend will send letters and books to the city for me.
12. They say that those laws have been swiftly carried (use fērō) by the senate.
13. They hear that the consul is not willing to punish the enemies with blows.
14. He always thinks that Roman citizens will listen to his words.
15. We see the farmer running; we see that the farmer is running.
16. You see that our friends are coming today; you hear that our friends will come tomorrow.
Lesson XXIV

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Translation of the Tense of the Infinitive

The translation of the infinitive into English depends on the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, knowing, telling, perceiving or showing.

In the following examples, note how the English translations of the infinitives change depending on the tense of the introductory verbs.

A present infinitive expresses action taking place at the same time as the main verb.

- Dicit *He says* that your father *is leading.*
- Dicit *He will say* that your father *will lead.*
- Dicēbat patrem tuum *dūcere.* He was saying that your father *was leading.*
- Dīxit *He said* that your father *had led.*
- Dīxerat *He had said* that your father *had led.*

A perfect infinitive expresses action completed before the time of the main verb.

- Dicit *He says* that your father *led.*
- Dicit *He will say* that your father *would lead.*
- Dicēbat patrem tuum *duxisse.* He was saying that your father *had led.*
- Dīxit *He said* that your father *had led.*
- Dīxerat *He had said* that your father *had led.*

A future infinitive expresses action that will be completed after the time of the main verb.

- Dicit *He says* that your father *will lead.*
- Dicit *He will say* that your father *will lead.*
- Dicēbat patrem tuum *ductūrum esse.* He was saying that your father *would lead.*
- Dīxit *He said* that your father *would lead.*
- Dīxerat *He had said* that your father *would lead.*

Pronoun Subjects in Indirect Statement

Pronoun subjects of indirect statements must be expressed, unlike pronoun subjects of direct statements.

- Timent. *They are afraid.* Putāvimus *eōs timēre.* We thought that they *were afraid.*
- Vocāvimus. *We called.* Audīvit nos *vincāvisse.* She heard that we *had called.*
- Capta est. *She was captured.* Mōnstrās eam *captam esse.* You point out that she *has been captured.*

If the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the main verb, the reflexive pronoun must be used.

- Dicimus *nōs timēre.* We say that we *are afraid.*
- Audīvit sē *vocātum esse.* She heard that she *had been called.*
- Dēmōnstrābunt sē *adfuisse.* They will point out that they *were present.*

Direct Objects of the Infinitive

If the infinitive is a transitive verb, it may take a direct object. The indirect statement may therefore have two accusatives, one the subject of the infinitive and the other the direct object of the infinitive.

- Dicunt *sē aurum mālle.* They say that you *prefer gold.*
- Putāvit sē *illās gentēs victūram esse.* She thought that she *would conquer those peoples.*
Vocabulary XXIV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st / 2nd Declension Adjectives</th>
<th>Irregular Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>antiquus, -a, -um</td>
<td>ancient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laetus, -a, -um</td>
<td>happy, joyful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novus, -a, -um</td>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publicus, -a, -um</td>
<td>public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs pública</td>
<td>state, republic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XXIV

A.

1. Putāvimus novōs discipulōs clāmāre.  4. Putāverant illōs discipulōs laetōs esse.
2. Putāvistī discipulōs clāmāvisse.  5. Putāverāmus nōs discipulōs laetissimōs futūrōs esse.
4. Cōnsul semper putābat istum novās rēs actūrum esse.
5. Vidēbimus agricolam currentem; vidimus eum currere.
6. Audīverant cōnsulem novum hostīs reī pūblicae pūnīre nōlle.
7. Heri audīvistī amīcōs nostrōs crās venturōs esse; hodiē vidēbis eōs adesse.
8. Putāmus eam āfutūram esse; putāvimus eam āfutūram esse.
9. Audiēs nautās clāmāre et dē nāvibus currere; audīvistī nautās clāmāre et dē nāvibus currere.

B.

1. I said that I would come; you said that you were coming; he said that he had come.
2. We used to say that iron was good; you used to say that gold was better; however they said that water
   was best.
3. Everyone had heard that the soldiers would be present; he had heard that the soldiers were present;
   she had heard that the soldiers had been present.
4. I saw that the enemy were being conquered; you saw that you would be conquered.
5. The consul will see that his enemies are present in the republic.
6. We heard that he had already said similar things in the same place.
7. They said that the senate would refer this new matter to the consuls.
8. The king said that the mountain was the ancient home of a god.
9. I always say that books are stronger than the sword; you, however, have often preferred the sword.
10. The father perceived that his son was lying; the mother, however, thought that he had not lied.
11. We saw the consuls departing from the city; you had already heard that they would depart.
12. We think that their envy cannot be endured; we thought that their envy could not be borne.
Lesson XXV

REVIEW

Vocabulary XXI-XXIV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nec</td>
<td>aurum</td>
<td>abssum</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>neque...neque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caelum</td>
<td>adsum</td>
<td>clāmō</td>
<td>sentiō</td>
<td>ferrum</td>
<td>antiquus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs pública</td>
<td>ictus</td>
<td>subitō</td>
<td>fātum</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>mālō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iam</td>
<td>ûsus</td>
<td>imperium</td>
<td>laetus</td>
<td>senātus</td>
<td>neque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currō</td>
<td>legō</td>
<td>públicos</td>
<td>novus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. Sentences with indirect statements:

1. He says (that) the enemies are following. 6. You saw (that) I was running.
2. We write (that) we will come. 7. They discerned (that) iron was not gold.
3. They show (that) the students are present. 8. I will show (that) that man will not be punished.
4. She shouted (that) she had seen fire. 9. Mother read (that) father was suffering.
5. I reported (that) the king had been killed. 10. We had heard (that) the consul would save us.

III. Volō, nōlō, mālō, and possum often use complementary infinitives. Replace the form of volō with the same form of nōlō, mālō, and possum in these sentences.

1. Epistulās scribere volō. 6. Hae virginēs semper cōnārī volunt.
FOR YOUR INFORMATION

Compounds of *sum* and *volō*

ad + sum = adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus
ab + sum = absum, abesse, afui, afuturus

Note that *āfui* assimilates the *b* of *ab* with the *f* of *fuī*.

nōn + volō = nōlō, nolle, nōluī, —
magis + volō = mālō, mālle, māluī, —

Exercise XXV

A.

1. Hās rēs ad senātum relātās esse audīvit.
2. Ille territus clāmāvit hominem ingentem adesse.
3. Multīs cum lacrimīs clāmāvit sè umbram vidisse.
4. Sapientēs antiquī putābant omnia fātō facta esse.
5. Omnia, sine quibus dicit sè vivere nōlle, sunt ūtilissima.
6. Dīxi nōs omnēs cucurrisse et petīvisse, sed hominem nōn vidisse.
7. Omnēs, qui aderant, clāmāvērunt nihil peius esse illus homine.
8. Rōmānus magnus dīxit sè hostem Rōmānōrum etiam in senātū sedentem vidēre.
10. Nōn modo in antīquissimīs librīs, sed etiam in novīs legimus senātum rem pūblicam bene gessisse.
11. Eī quī nōs omnīs, quī rem pūblicam, quī imperium Rōmānum délere cōnātī sunt, ā deīs pūnientur.

B.

1. He preferred to be rather than to appear (to be) good.
2. I perceive that you are not happy as you write.
3. What you want, I want; therefore we will be friends.
4. Jupiter said that he would give power without end to the Romans.
5. What you said in the senate that you would do, you have not done.
6. The son of Caesar, Augustus by name, wishes to write very many new laws.
7. A great Roman says that he has seen an enemy of the state sitting even in the senate.
8. What is not discerned with the eyes can nevertheless often be seen by the mind.
9. In the books about the laws it is often written that the laws of the Romans were very good.
10. The leaders of the Romans were able to be defeated neither with gold nor with the sword.
11. That man suddenly ordered letters to be brought back which he had already sent.
Lesson XXVI

IRREGULAR VERB: EÔ, ĪRE, ĪĪ/ĪVĪ, ITUM, IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM

eō, īre, īī/īvī, itum go

Passive forms of eō are rare.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>I go, am going</td>
<td>ibam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īs</td>
<td>you go, are going</td>
<td>ibās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>he goes, is going</td>
<td>ibat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imus</td>
<td>we go, are going</td>
<td>ibāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ītis</td>
<td>you go, are going</td>
<td>ibātīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eunt</td>
<td>they go, are going</td>
<td>ibant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īī / īvī</td>
<td>I went/ have gone</td>
<td>ieram / īveram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The perfect stem iv- usually drops the v.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>iēns, euntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>itūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTENSIVE ADJECTIVE: ipse, ipsa, ipsum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>ipse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum emphasizes a noun or pronoun. It agrees with the word it modifies in case, number, and gender. It may be translated: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself; ourselves, yourselves, themselves; in person; very.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum may be translated “very,” especially when used with a demonstrative.

In hāc ipsā urbe in this very city

Like any adjective, ipse, ipsa, ipsum may be used substantively.

Ipsum vidimus. We saw the man himself.
Vocabulary XXVI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irregular Verbs</th>
<th>Interactive Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eō, īre, iī / īvī, itum</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subeō, subīre, subīi / subīvī, subītum</td>
<td>undergo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Declension Noun</td>
<td>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīdus, sideris, n.</td>
<td>myself, yourself, himself; herself, itself; ourselves, yourselves, themselves; in person; very</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XXVI

A.

1. Ībant; ī; īre; īvīse; ītūrum esse.
2. Dīxit sē ad ipsās portās urbis īre.
3. Dīxit sē ad ipsās portās urbis ītūrum esse.
4. Ego ipse ēōs vīdī; vōs īpsi ēōs vīdistis.
5. Īpsi multa mala nova subīvimus.
6. Fugere nōn poterant, quod in urbem ierant.
7. Ipse in Asiam īre nōlui. (Cicero, Letters to Atticus 3.19.1)
8. Illa sunt sīdera quae vocantur errantia.
9. Ad exercitum Pompeius erat ītūrus et statim īit. (Cicero, Letters to his Friends 8.4.4)
10. Eōdem tempore rēgīnam īre nōluit. (Cicero, Letters to Atticus 3.19.1)
11. Vīdērunt ēōs fugientēs ab sē īre.
13. Audīvīmus cūm ills temporībus nōn saepe in senātū fuisse.
14. Cīvēs rem pūblicam īpsum dēfendērunt, quam saepe laudāvērunt.
15. Illī servī, quī ā dominīs fūgerant, īpsi poenās nōn dedērunt.
16. Postquam Caesar mortuus est, Rōmānī sīdus dē caelō lapsum per noctem multā cum lūce cucurrisse dīcēbant.

B.

1. You (sg.) were going; we will go; they are about to go.
2. We will go to the gates of the city where we will try to inspect the situation.
3. I fortify myself at these times by the use of gold, not the sword.
4. You yourselves have read these very words in books written by ancient poets.
5. Stretching (his) hands toward the stars, he called the gods.
6. During the day the stars themselves cannot be seen by the eyes of men.
7. The fates could be discerned in the stars of the sky by the ancient Romans.
8. While these things were being carried on in the city of Rome, all the tribes of Italy had gone to arms themselves.
9. At night I can see the stars rising out of the very sea and into the sky.
10. He had undergone many more difficult things than these on behalf of the state.
11. At this time on account of your letters he perceives that he will be very dear among you.
12. For he said to me that you were in Italy and that he was sending the boys to you.
Lesson XXVII

READING

Dividing the Sentence (2)

Recall the distinction between clauses and phrases:

- A phrase is a group of related words *not* containing a subject and predicate.
- A clause is a group of words containing a subject and predicate.

Phrases are often built around prepositions, participles, or infinitives.

- A **PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE** consists of a preposition, its object, and any words modifying the object. A preposition often, but not always, begins its phrase:
  - ad litus  nōbiscum
  - magnā cum laude  prō beneficiō

- A **PARTICIPLE PHRASE** consists of a noun or pronoun, a participle, and any related words. The related words often lie between the participle and the word with which it agrees; these participle sandwiches form a single unit of meaning:
  - Cēpheus maximō gaudiō adfectus
  - Perseus haec audiēns

An **INFINITIVE PHRASE** consists of an infinitive and its object or any other words associated with it:

  - mātrem suam rūrsus vidēre

Prepositional, participle, and infinitive phrases can be used as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs:

- (Mātrem suam rūrsus vidēre) volēbat.  *Noun phrase (object of volēbat)*
- Tandem igitur (cum uxōre suā) (ē rēgnō Cēpheī) discessit.  *Adverb phrases*

Phrases must be translated as single units. Keep the elements of a phrase together as you translate.

Here are a few sentences [in which every subordinate clause has been put in brackets], every phrase of more than one word has been put (in parentheses), every verb has been put in bold face type, and every connecting device in red:

- Perseus [postquam (ad litus) descendit], prīnum tālāria exuit; tum (ad saxum) vēnit [ubi Andromeda adligāta erat].  *Ea autem (omnem spem salūtis) dēposuerat et [ubi Perseus adīt], terrōre paene examināta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patrī reddidit.*
### Vocabulary XXVII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coniunx, coniugis m. / f.</td>
<td>spouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pauci, -ae, -a</td>
<td>few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quondam</td>
<td>once, at one time, formerly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 9. The Reward of Valor


exuō, -ere, exūi, exūtum put or take off
salūs, salūtis f. safety, escape, freedom
dēponō = dē + ponō
adeō = ad + eō
paene almost, practically
exanimō, āre, -āvī, -ātum exhaust
vinculum, i n. bond

solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum loosen, unbind, release
reddō = re + dō
adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum do to, move, affect
gaudium, -ī n. gladness, joy
meritus, -a, -um deserved, due
gratiam referre, reward
uxor, uxōris f. wife

#### 10. Polydectes Is Transformed


conferō, -ferre, -tuli, collātum bring together;
(with sē) take oneself, go
vacuus, -a, -um empty
omnīnō, adv. entirely
hūc, adv. to this place, hither
eō, adv. to that place
inrumpō, -ere, irrūpī, irruptum burst in
ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum show, stretch out before
Lesson XXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Latin adverbs have three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, and superlative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fortiter</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bravely</td>
<td>more / rather / too bravely</td>
<td>most / very bravely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The comparative is formed by adding -ius to the positive stem of the adjective. This is also the neuter accusative singular form of the comparative adjective. Adverbs do not decline.

- altus, -a, -um  deep  → altius  more / rather / too deeply
- miser, misera, -um  unhappy  → miserius  more / rather / too unhappily
- sapiens, -ntis  wise  → sapientius  more / rather / too wisely
- facilis, -e  easy  → facilius  more / rather / too easily
- ācer, ācris, ācre  keen  → ācrius  more / rather / too keenly

The superlative of the adverb is formed by adding -ē to the superlative stem of the adjective.

- altissimus, -a, -um  → altissimē  most / very deeply
- miserrimus, -a, -um  → miserrimē  most / very unhappily
- sapientissimus, -a, -um  → sapientissimē  most / very wisely
- facillimus, -a, -um  → facillimē  most / very easily
- ācerrimus, -a, -um  → ācerrimē  most / very sharply

Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

The following common adverbs have some irregular forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Positive Adverb</th>
<th>Comparative Adverb</th>
<th>Superlative Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>bene</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um</td>
<td>male</td>
<td>peius</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>magnopere</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>maximē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>parum</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um</td>
<td>multum</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diū for a long time</td>
<td>diūtius for a longer time</td>
<td>diūtissimē for the longest time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Peculiarities of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Adjectives whose stems end with a vowel form the comparative with magis and the positive adjective, and the superlative with maximē and the positive adjective. The adjective of the construction agrees with the word it modifies in case, number, and gender. The adverbs magis and maximē are indeclinable.

- magis idoneus, -a, -um  more suitable
- maximē idoneus, -a, -um  most suitable

When quam precedes a superlative adjective or adverb it shows the highest possible degree of comparison.

- quam optimus vir  the best possible man / the best man possible / as good a man as possible
- quam facillimē  as easily as possible
Vocabulary XXVIII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>1st / 2nd Declension Adjective</th>
<th>3rd Declension Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>magis</td>
<td>more, rather</td>
<td>idoneus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam (+ superlative)</td>
<td>as...as possible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>for a longer time</td>
<td>mors, mortis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diūtissime</td>
<td>for the longest time; for a very long time</td>
<td>pars, partis, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XXVIII

A.

1. Fortius cōnāmur, quod contendere amāmus.
2. Melius scribīmus quam vōs, nam omnēs epistulās nostrās legere possunt.
3. Agricolae in agrīs diūtius opera faciunt quam in urbibus civēs; diūtissimē autem nautae in nāvibus.
4. Pauči celerius cucurrērunt quam tū; ille autem qui celerrimē cucurrit ab omnibus laudābitur.
5. Tū facillimē videbis mē tibi amīcum fuisse.
7. Pythagoras et amīcī in urbe suā vítam fēlicissimam agēbant et maximā cum cūrā civēs docēbant.
8. Fēlicius mortuus est Augustus quam Gaius, nam Gaium hostēs interfēcērunt, Augustus autem longam vítam ēgit.
9. Iter per Asiam fēcī et vítam miserrimam in omnibus partibus vīdī.
10. Diūtius in hāc urbe nostrā manēre nōn potes, nam scelera tua omnia ferre iam nōn possumus.
11. Rōmānī dicēbant rēgem suum Numam Pythagorae discipulum fuisse, sed errābant, nam multīs annīs ante Pythagoram rēxit Rōmānōs Numa.

B.

1. I think that you have written as well as possible.
2. For I have decided to die a good (man) rather than to live a bad (one).
3. He lives best who does not want to live for himself but for all.
4. In all bad matters, it is worse to see (them) than to hear (about them).
5. For a long time now we have seen him less in the city, for he has done many (things) in the fields.
6. I can do the same (things), but less well than she (that woman).
7. These students can hear what the teacher says better than those.
8. We perceive that you love the state less than your life.
9. (Those) who think that the spirit lives after death can die more happily.
10. Cicero seems to me to have done many things more wisely than Caesar.
11. What you sent to me I have now received most keenly; now I write to you as friend (writes) to friend.
12. The state itself will teach you that I suffer all (things) for it.
Lesson XXIX

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ĪUS AND DATIVE IN -Ī

Several 1st / 2nd declension adjectives are regular except for the genitive singular ending in -īus and dative singular ending in -ī. These may be remembered by using the mnemonic ŬNUS NAUTA:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Upper</th>
<th>Lower</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ŭnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>Neuter, neutra, neutrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nullus, -a, -um</td>
<td>no, none, not any</td>
<td>Another, other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulus, -a, -um</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>Ter, utra, utrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ŭlus, -a, -um</td>
<td>alone, only</td>
<td>Ŭter, altera, alterum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alius, -a, -um normally forms its genitive singular from alter: alterius.

Cardinal Numerals

Cardinal numerals are used to count.
Latin cardinal numerals from one to ten are:

ūnis, duo, trēs, quattuor, quinque, sex, septem, octo, novem, decem.

Duo and trēs are declined as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Upper</th>
<th>Lower</th>
<th>Upper</th>
<th>Lower</th>
<th>Upper</th>
<th>Lower</th>
<th>Upper</th>
<th>Lower</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>Masc./Fem.</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>duorom</td>
<td>triu</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quattuor, quinque, sex, septem, octo, novem, decem and centum (one hundred) are indeclinable adjectives.

Quattuor filiōs et quinque filiās habeō. I have four sons and five daughters.

Centum virōs cognōscō, sed sōlī decem sunt amīci. I know one hundred men, but only ten are friends.

Ordinal Numerals

Ordinal numerals are used to indicate place in a sequence: first, second, third, etc.
They are 1st / 2nd declension adjectives and agree with the words they modify in case, number, and gender.

Hic est prīmus liber, quem lēgī. This is the first book which I have read.

Laudāmus Numam, rēgem secundum Romānum. We praise Numa, the second king of Rome.


Vocabulary XXIX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irregular Adjectives</th>
<th>Indeclinable Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ūnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>quattuor, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nullus, -a, -um</td>
<td>quinque, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ullus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sex, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōlus, -a, -um</td>
<td>septem, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuter, neutra, neutrum</td>
<td>octo, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter, altera, alterum</td>
<td>novem, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unter, utra, utrum</td>
<td>decem, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōtus, -a, -um</td>
<td>centum, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alius, alia, aliud</td>
<td>1st / 2nd Declension Adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo, duae, duo</td>
<td>3rd Declension Adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trēs, tria</td>
<td>secundus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise XXIX

A.

1. Ŭnum prō multīs dabitur caput. (Vergil *Aeneid* 5.815)
2. Neutram in partem movērī mālō; in hōc locō manēbō.
3. Tōtum sē reī publicae dedit.
4. Uter ex his sapiēns tibi vidētūr? (Seneca *Letters* 90.14)
5. Sub rēgibus Rōmānī neque ullō bellō neque ab hostibus ullīs victī sunt.
6. Cerberus mē tribus ōribus et tribus capitibus in umerīs duōbus terret.
7. Cum omnibus magis quam sōlī interfici voluērunt.
8. Omnēs, quōrum in alterīus manū vita posita est, idem saepe sentiunt.
9. Mālet mē sapientem ā vōbīs quam sē pessimum putārī.
10. Ille, idōneus urbī magis quam bellō, novem annōs aberat.
11. Nōn nullī hominēs putant fātum suum ā sē cōnstitūtum esse.

B.

1. One (man) had three books, another had five, but they did not have any letters.
2. Which (book) is better for me? This (one) or that (one)?
3. One ship only can be seen on the whole sea today.
4. (There) are not three or four friends for you in this city.
5. Neither of the consuls, frightened by the enemy, was preparing to depart from the city.
6. In which army (of the two) was the greater hope?
7. That wretched (man) kept on shouting that he was a Roman citizen.
8. Which consul will be sent to which war? Neither!
9. I alone will defend the head, the reputation and fortunes of another.
10. After the death of his third wife, he decided not to lead another (woman) into his house.
11. Only a few of those (men) who had strived very greatly came to the end.
Lesson XXX

REVIEW

Vocabulary XXV - XXIX

quondam eō ipse coniunx quattuor quam + superlative
sidus ūnus sōlus subeō secundus pauci
decem idoneus trēs tempus nullus mors
quinque tertius uter sex magis centum
alia octo pars neuter novem alter
duo tōtus ullus septem

the other another alone once nine one hundred
any entire two eight part which (of two)
one more six neither seven as...as possible
five death none time few second
suitable undergo star spouse myself ten
go third itself four three

I. Translate the underlined words with the appropriate form of the reflexive pronoun or ipse, ipsa, ipsum; include prepositions where necessary.

1. He is talking about himself.  4. You will save yourselves.  7. You wrote this yourself.
2. I saw the king himself.  5. I am talking to myself.  8. The queen came in person.
3. I saw the king myself.  6. They will hurt themselves.  9. I heard that very song.

II. Give the form of eō in the same person, number, tense as the form of veniō.

1. veniēmus  3. vēnistī 5. venit  7. vēneritis 9. vēneram
2. veniēbant  4. veniēs 6. vēnimus 8. veniēbās 10. vēnērunt

III. Complete the comparison of these adverbs with the other two degrees (positive, comparative or superlative).

1. acriter  3. celerrimē 5. longius 7. male
2. diūtius  4. magis 6. plūrimum 8. sapienter

IV. Write these equations using numerals.

1. Ūnus et novem sunt decem.  3. Trēs dē octo sunt quinque.  5. Ūnus dē novem sunt octo.
2. Quattuor et sex sunt decem.  4. Quinque et duo sunt septem.  6. Sex dē novem sunt trēs.

V. Put every participle or infinitive phrase in parentheses. Translate the entire sentence.

1. Matrem suam vidēre voluit.  4. Rēx ad Italiam iter facere māvult.
2. Puellae librōs legentēs sunt fēlīcēs.  5. In castra militēs tēlis vulnerātōs dūcemus.
FOR YOUR INFORMATION

Compounds of EŌ

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abeō</td>
<td>depart; disappear; die</td>
<td>Ex vitā abiit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adeō</td>
<td>approach; attack</td>
<td>Ad mē adeunt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exeō</td>
<td>pass beyond; exceed; withdraw</td>
<td>Ex oppidō exiit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ineō</td>
<td>enter; enter upon</td>
<td>Illīus domum inīre voluisti.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pereō</td>
<td>perish; be ruined</td>
<td>Prō amīcis perīre nōn timidus erat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redeō</td>
<td>go or come back; return</td>
<td>Spēs vitae puerō aegrō rediit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subeō</td>
<td>enter; approach; undergo</td>
<td>Vōbiscum omnia subībimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trānseō</td>
<td>pass over; cross</td>
<td>Terror ad hostēs trànsit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. The Oracle Fulfilled


redeō = re + eō  
vītō (1) avoid, escape  
lūdus, -ī m. game, sport  
conveniō = con + veniō, come together  
certāmen, certāminis n. struggle, contest  

ineō = in + eō  
discus, i, m. discus  
coniciō, -ere, coniēcī, coniēctum throw  
forte, adv. by chance, accidentally
Rules of Syntax for New Second Steps in Latin

AGREEMENT

First Rule of Concord. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.


1. A verb with a compound subject (two or more subjects joined by et, -que, ac, or atque) is usually plural.

Puer et puella vocant. The boy and the girl call.

2. A verb with compound subjects of different persons will generally agree with the lower person
(1st person takes precedence over 2nd and 3rd persons, and 2nd over 3rd) and will always be plural.


3. A verb with singular subjects joined by aut or neque is singular.

Aut puer aut puella vocat. Either the boy or the girl calls.

4. A verb that belongs to two or more subjects in separate clauses (gapping) will agree with one subject and
will be understood with the other subjects.

Puer vocat, nōn puellae. The boy calls, the girls do not (call).

5. The verb of a relative clause whose subject is the relative pronoun agrees in person and number with the
antecedent of the relative pronoun.

Vōs, quī tristēs estis, amābitis. You, who are sad, will love.

Second Rule of Concord. An adjective (as well as an adjectival pronoun or participle) agrees with the noun it
modifies in case, number, and gender.

bonus nauta, good sailor; illa puella, that girl; capta arma, seized weapons

1. An attributive adjective that modifies two or more nouns will generally agree with the nearest noun.

ācerrima īra et studium the sharpest anger and zeal

2. A predicate adjective that modifies two or more nouns will generally be plural in number.
It may agree with the nearest or most important noun in gender.
Masculine is the most important gender of nouns with life, neuter of nouns without life.

Puer et puella sunt bonī. The boy and girl are good.
Murus et porta dē caelō tacta sunt. The wall and the gate are struck by lightning.

Third Rule of Concord. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in number and gender; its case is
determined by its use in the relative clause.

Puella, quam puer amat, est fēlix. The girl, whom the boy likes, is happy.

Apposition. An appositive is a noun describing another noun and agrees with it in case.

Hōs librōs, pulcherrimum dōnum, heri accēpi. Yesterday I received these books, a very beautiful gift.

Predicate Noun. With sum and other linking verbs, a noun in the predicate which describes the subject will agree
with it in case.

Agricola erat vir fortissimus. The farmer was a very brave man.
Discipulus bonus esse vidētur etiam pius filius. The good student seems a dutiful son also.
USES OF CASES

Nominative

1. **Subject.** The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
   
   Puella vocat. *The girl calls.*

2. **Predicate.** The predicate noun or adjective of a finite form of the verb *sum*, or of a verb of *seeming* or *becoming*, or of a passive verb of *making*, *choosing*, *showing*, *thinking*, or *calling*, is in the nominative case.
   
   Puer servus est. *The boy is a slave.*  
   Puella vidētur sapiēns. *The girl seems wise.*  
   Ille cōnsul factus est. *That man was made consul.*

Genitive

1. **The Genitive of Possession.** A genitive is used to denote the person or thing to whom or which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs.
   
   scelera rēgis, *the crimes of the king / the king's crimes*

Dative

1. **Indirect Object.** A noun or pronoun indirectly affected by the action of the verb is in the dative case.
   
   Dux mīlitī arma dat. *The leader gives the arms to the soldier.*

2. **Dative with Certain Adjectives.** Adjectives expressing ideas like *friendliness*, *fitness*, *nearness*, *likeness*, and their opposites may take a dative (e.g. *amicus*, *cārus*, *idōneus*, *proximus*, *similis* and *dissimilis*, *ūtilis*).
   
   Cōnsul amīcus mihi est. *The consul is friendly to me.*

ACCUSATIVE

1. **Direct Object.** The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.
   
   Urbem capit. *He captures the city.*

2. **Accusative of Motion Towards or Place To Which.** Motion to or towards is expressed by the accusative case with the prepositions *ad* or *in*.
   
   In Italiam vēnit. *He came to Italy.*

3. **Accusative of Duration of Time.** Duration of time (or time how long) is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.
   
   Rēx decem annōs fuit. *He was king for ten years.*

4. **Double Accusative.** Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* (*rogō* and *doceō*) may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing.
   
   Tē carmen docuit. *He taught you a song.*

5. **Predicate Accusative.** Verbs of *calling*, *choosing*, *making* and *thinking* (factitive verbs) take two accusatives, a direct object and its complement. The two accusatives refer to the same person or thing.
   
   Urbem Rōmam vocāvērunt. *They called the city Rome.*

6. **Subject Accusative.** The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the accusative.
   
   Vult rēgīnam dicere. *He wants the queen to speak.*  
   Audit rēgīnam dicere. *He hears that the queen is speaking.*

7. **Accusative with Certain Prepositions.** Many prepositions take the accusative (e.g. *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *post*, *propter*).
ABLATIVE

1. **Ablative of Means or Instrument.** The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (answers the question “by or with what?”).
   
   *Urbs saxīs mūnīta est.* *The city was fortified with stones.*

2. **Ablative of Personal Agent.** The person by whom something is done is expressed by the ablative case with the preposition ā / ab (answers the question “by whom?”).
   
   *Urbs ā Rōmānīs mūnīta est.* *The city was fortified by the Romans.*

3. **Ablative of Accompaniment.** Accompaniment or association is often expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum (answers the question “with whom?”). *Cum* regularly becomes enclitic with mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quā, quibus.
   
   *Cum comitibus iter fēcit.* *He made a journey with his comrades.*
   
   *Puerī mēcum veniunt.* *The boys come with me.*

4. **Ablative of Place Where or In Which.** Place where or in which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions in, pro and sub (and rarely by the accusative with ad).
   
   *Fāma in caelō volāvit.* *Rumor flew in the sky.*
   
   *(Ad flūmen stetit.* *He stood at the river.)*

5. **Ablative of Motion Away From or Place From Which.** Motion away from or place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions ā / ab, dē, or ē / ex.
   
   *Ex urbe vēnit.* *He came from the city.*

6. **Ablative of Time When.** Time when is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
   
   *Eō tempore urbem cēpit.* *At that time he captured the city.*

7. **Ablative of Comparison.** In comparative constructions without quam, the second of the two things compared is in the ablative case. The ablative of comparison is used only when the first of the two things compared is in the nominative or accusative case.
   
   *Epistulae eius sunt longiōrēs librīs.* *His letters are longer than his books.*

8. **Ablative of Degree of Difference.** In comparative constructions, the degree or measure of difference between the two things compared is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.
   
   *Mare est multō altius quam flumen.* *The sea is much deeper than the river.*

9. **Ablative of Cause.** The cause or reason for an action or condition may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition (answers the question “why?”).
   
   *Factīs laudātur.* *He is praised for his deeds*.

10. **Ablative of Manner.** The manner or way in which an action is done may be expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum (answers the question “how?”). *Cum* may be omitted if an adjective modifies the ablative.
    
    *Epistula cum cūrā scripta est.* *The letter was written with care (carefully).*
    
    *Epistula magnā cūrā scripta est.* *The letter was written with great care (very carefully).*

11. **Ablative with Certain Prepositions.** Many prepositions take the ablative (e.g. ā, ab, cum, dē, ē, ex, prō, sine, sub).
VERB TENSES

The Present Tense expresses a continuous or ongoing action in the present or states something that applies to all time.

Vocat. He is calling / calls / does call. Malum est mentiri. It is bad to lie.

1. When dum takes the present indicative it may express past action.

Dum ducem petit, militēs pugnāverunt. While he was seeking the leader, the soldiers fought.

The Imperfect Tense expresses continuous, repeated, or habitual action in the past.

Vocābat. He was calling / kept calling / used to call.

The Future Tense expresses continuous or indefinite action in the future.

Vocābit. He will call / is going to call.

The Perfect Tense expresses completed action. Although it has one form, it has two separate uses.

1. The Perfect expresses a completed action with continuing effect in the present. It corresponds to the English present perfect and is translated with the auxiliary verb “has / have”.

Vocāvit. He has called.

2. The Aorist expresses a simple completed action.

Vocāvit. He called / did call.

The Pluperfect Tense expresses an action completed in the past and is used of an action completed before another action was begun. It corresponds to the English past perfect and is translated with the auxiliary verb “had”.

Vocāverat. He had called.

The Future Perfect Tense expresses an action completed in the future. It is translated with the auxiliary verbs “will / shall have.”

Vocāverit. He will have called.

VERB MOODS

The Indicative Mood is used to state a fact or ask a question.

Puella vocat. The girl is calling. Utra puella vocābat? Which girl was calling?

A Participle is a verbal adjective. As a verb, it may take an object; as an adjective, it agrees with the word it modifies in case, number, and gender, and may be used substantively.

1. The Present Active Participle expresses action taking place at the same time as the main verb.

Puellam sedentem in silvā vidi. I saw the girl sitting in the forest.

2. The Perfect Passive Participle expresses action completed before the time of the main verb.

Puella, in silvā visa, puerum vocāvit. The girl, seen in the forest, called the boy.

3. The Future Active Participle expresses action that will be completed after the time of the main verb.

Puella, in silvā moritūra, caput tēxit. The girl, about to die in the forest, covered her head.
The **Infinitive** is a verbal noun. It is always neuter, always singular, and either nominative or accusative.

1. **Complementary Infinitive.** The complementary infinitive completes the meaning of another verb. The following verbs of wishing, trying, deciding, beginning, fearing, being able, etc. may take a complementary infinitive:

   - cōnor, cōnstituō, contendō, incipiō, mālō, nōlō, parō, possum, tendō, timeō, vereor, volō;
   - and in the passive: dīcō, putō, videō.

   *Puella vidēre potest.* *The girl is able to see.*

2. **Infinitive of Indirect Statement.** Verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, telling, perceiving, and showing introduce the accusative and infinitive of indirect statement.

   **The Present Infinitive** expresses action taking place at the same time as the main verb.
   - Dīcit rēgīnam esse fortem. *He says (that) the queen is brave.*
   - Dixit rēgīnam esse fortem. *He said (that) the queen was brave.*

   **The Perfect Infinitive** expresses action completed before the time of the main verb.
   - Dīcit rēgīnam fuisse fortem. *He says (that) the queen was brave.*
   - Dixit rēgīnam fuisse fortem. *He said (that) the queen had been brave.*

   **The Future Infinitive** expresses action that will be completed after the time of the main verb.
   - Dīcit rēgīnam futūram esse fortem. *He says (that) the queen will be brave.*
   - Dixit rēgīnam futūram esse fortem. *He said (that) the queen would be brave.*

3. **The Infinitive as Subject or Object.** The infinitive may be used as a neuter singular noun in the nominative or accusative.

   - Útile est bonōs amīcōs habēre. *It is useful to have good friends.*
   - Amō cantāre. *I like to sing.*
## Regular Verbs - Indicative Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third I-stem</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>amō</td>
<td>monēō</td>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>audiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amās</td>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>dūcis</td>
<td>capis</td>
<td>audis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amat</td>
<td>monēt</td>
<td>dūcit</td>
<td>capit</td>
<td>audit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāmus</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>dūcimus</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>audimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātis</td>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>dūcitis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>auditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amant</td>
<td>monent</td>
<td>dūcunt</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>audiant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td>amābam</td>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>dūcēbam</td>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>audiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābās</td>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>dūcēbās</td>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābat</td>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>dūcēbat</td>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābāmus</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>dūcēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābātis</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>dūcēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābant</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>dūcēbant</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>amābō</td>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>dūcam</td>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>audiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>dūcēs</td>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>audiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābit</td>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>dūcet</td>
<td>capiēt</td>
<td>audiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābimus</td>
<td>monēbimus</td>
<td>dūcēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābītis</td>
<td>monēbītis</td>
<td>dūcētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābunt</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
<td>dūcent</td>
<td>capiētent</td>
<td>audient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>monui</td>
<td>dūxī</td>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td>audīvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvīstī</td>
<td>monuīstī</td>
<td>dūxistī</td>
<td>cēpistī</td>
<td>audīvistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvit</td>
<td>monuīt</td>
<td>dūxīt</td>
<td>cēpit</td>
<td>audīvit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvīmus</td>
<td>monuīmus</td>
<td>dūxīmus</td>
<td>cēpīmus</td>
<td>audīvimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvīstis</td>
<td>monuīstis</td>
<td>dūxītis</td>
<td>cēpītis</td>
<td>audīvistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvērunt</td>
<td>monuērunt</td>
<td>dūxērunt</td>
<td>cēpērunt</td>
<td>audīvērunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td>amāveram</td>
<td>monuērām</td>
<td>dūxeram</td>
<td>cēperam</td>
<td>audīveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverās</td>
<td>monuērās</td>
<td>dūxerās</td>
<td>cēperās</td>
<td>audīverās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverat</td>
<td>monuērat</td>
<td>dūxerat</td>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td>audīverat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverāmus</td>
<td>monuērāmus</td>
<td>dūxerāmus</td>
<td>cēperāmus</td>
<td>audīverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverātis</td>
<td>monuērātis</td>
<td>dūxerātis</td>
<td>cēperātis</td>
<td>audīverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverant</td>
<td>monuērant</td>
<td>dūxerant</td>
<td>cēperant</td>
<td>audīverant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>amāverō</td>
<td>monuērō</td>
<td>dūxerō</td>
<td>cēperō</td>
<td>audīverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverēs</td>
<td>monuērēs</td>
<td>dūxerēs</td>
<td>cēperēs</td>
<td>audīverēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>monuērit</td>
<td>dūxerit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverimus</td>
<td>monuērīmus</td>
<td>dūxerīmus</td>
<td>cēperīmus</td>
<td>audīverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverītis</td>
<td>monuērītis</td>
<td>dūxerītis</td>
<td>cēperītis</td>
<td>audīverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>monuērint</td>
<td>dūxerint</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Third Conjugation has a variable vowel.*
### Regular Verbs – Indicative Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third I-stem</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>amor</td>
<td>monēor</td>
<td>dūcor</td>
<td>capior</td>
<td>audior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāris</td>
<td>monēris</td>
<td>dūceris</td>
<td>caperis</td>
<td>audiris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātur</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>dūcitur</td>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>auditur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāmūr</td>
<td>monēmūr</td>
<td>dūcimūr</td>
<td>capimūr</td>
<td>audimūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāminī</td>
<td>monēminī</td>
<td>dūcimīnī</td>
<td>capimīnī</td>
<td>audimīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amantur</td>
<td>monentur</td>
<td>dūcuntur</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
<td>audiuuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td>amābar</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
<td>dūcēbar</td>
<td>capiēbar</td>
<td>audiēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābāris</td>
<td>monēbāris</td>
<td>dūcēbāris</td>
<td>capiēbāris</td>
<td>audiēbāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābātur</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
<td>dūcēbātur</td>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
<td>audiēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābāmūr</td>
<td>monēbāmūr</td>
<td>dūcēbāmūr</td>
<td>capiēbāmūr</td>
<td>audiēbāmūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābāminī</td>
<td>monēbāminī</td>
<td>dūcēbāminī</td>
<td>capiēbāminī</td>
<td>audiēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābāntur</td>
<td>monēbāntur</td>
<td>dūcēbāntur</td>
<td>capiēbāntur</td>
<td>audiēbāntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>amābor</td>
<td>monēbor</td>
<td>dūcar</td>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>audiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāberis</td>
<td>monēberis</td>
<td>dūcēris</td>
<td>capiēris</td>
<td>audiēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābitur</td>
<td>monēbitur</td>
<td>dūcētur</td>
<td>capiētūr</td>
<td>audiētūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābīmur</td>
<td>monēbīmur</td>
<td>dūcēmūr</td>
<td>capiēmūr</td>
<td>audiēmūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābīminī</td>
<td>monēbīminī</td>
<td>dūcēbīminī</td>
<td>capiēbīminī</td>
<td>audiēbīminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābīntur</td>
<td>monēbīntur</td>
<td>dūcēbīntur</td>
<td>capiēbīntur</td>
<td>audiēbīntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>amātus, -a sum</td>
<td>monitus, -a sum</td>
<td>ductus, -a sum</td>
<td>captus, -a sum</td>
<td>auditus, -a sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus, -a es</td>
<td>monitus, -a es</td>
<td>ductus, -a es</td>
<td>captus, -a es</td>
<td>auditus, -a es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um est</td>
<td>moniti, -ae sumus</td>
<td>ducti, -ae sumus</td>
<td>capti, -ae sumus</td>
<td>auditī, -ae sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī, -ae es</td>
<td>moniti, -ae es</td>
<td>ducti, -ae es</td>
<td>capti, -ae estis</td>
<td>auditī, -ae estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>moniti, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>ducti, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>capti, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>auditī, -ae, -a sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td>amātus, -a eram</td>
<td>monitus, -a erās</td>
<td>ductus, -a erās</td>
<td>captus, -a erās</td>
<td>auditus, -a erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um erat</td>
<td>moniti, -ae erāmus</td>
<td>ducti, -ae erāmus</td>
<td>capti, -ae erāmus</td>
<td>auditī, -ae erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī, -ae erātis</td>
<td>moniti, -ae erātis</td>
<td>ducti, -ae erātis</td>
<td>capti, -ae erātis</td>
<td>auditī, -ae erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>moniti, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>ducti, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>capti, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>auditī, -ae, -a erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>amātus, -a erō</td>
<td>monitus, -a erō</td>
<td>ductus, -a erō</td>
<td>captus, -a erō</td>
<td>auditus, -a erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus, -a eris</td>
<td>monitus, -a eris</td>
<td>ductus, -a eris</td>
<td>captus, -a eris</td>
<td>auditus, -a eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um erit</td>
<td>moniti, -ae erimus</td>
<td>ducti, -ae erimus</td>
<td>capti, -ae erimus</td>
<td>auditī, -ae erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī, -ae eritis</td>
<td>moniti, -ae eritis</td>
<td>ducti, -ae eritis</td>
<td>capti, -ae eritis</td>
<td>auditī, -ae eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>moniti, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>ducti, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>capti, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>auditī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Regular Verbs

### Participles - Active and Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third I-stem</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>amāns, -ntis</td>
<td>monēns, -ntis</td>
<td>dūcēns, -ntis</td>
<td>capiēns, -ntis</td>
<td>audiēns, -ntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>amatūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>monitūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>ducūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>captūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>auditūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>amatūs, -a, -um</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um</td>
<td>ductus, -a, -um</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>auditus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitives - Active and Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third I-stem</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>audire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>amāvisse</td>
<td>monuisse</td>
<td>dūxisse</td>
<td>cépi</td>
<td>audivisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>amatūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>monitūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>ducūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>captūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>auditūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>amāri</td>
<td>monēri</td>
<td>dūci</td>
<td>capi</td>
<td>audiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>amatūs, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>monitus esse</td>
<td>ductus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>auditus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>amatum irī</td>
<td>monitum irī</td>
<td>ductum irī</td>
<td>captum irī</td>
<td>auditum irī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Irregular Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Sum</th>
<th>Volō</th>
<th>Nōlō</th>
<th>Mālō</th>
<th>Eō</th>
<th>Ferō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>feror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvis</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>furt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td>imus</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
<td>itis</td>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>eram</th>
<th>volēbam</th>
<th>nōlēbam</th>
<th>mālēbam</th>
<th>ībam</th>
<th>ferēbam</th>
<th>ferēbar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erās</td>
<td>volēbās</td>
<td>nōlēbās</td>
<td>mālēbās</td>
<td>ībās</td>
<td>ferēbās</td>
<td>ferēbāris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>volēbat</td>
<td>nōlēbat</td>
<td>mālēbat</td>
<td>ībat</td>
<td>ferēbat</td>
<td>ferēbātur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>volēbāmus</td>
<td>nōlēbāmus</td>
<td>mālēbāmus</td>
<td>ībāmus</td>
<td>ferēbāmus</td>
<td>ferēbāmur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>volēbātis</td>
<td>nōlēbātis</td>
<td>mālēbātis</td>
<td>ībātis</td>
<td>ferēbātis</td>
<td>ferēbāminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erant</td>
<td>volēbant</td>
<td>nōlēbant</td>
<td>mālēbant</td>
<td>ībant</td>
<td>ferēbant</td>
<td>ferēbantur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>erō</th>
<th>volam</th>
<th>nōlam</th>
<th>mālam</th>
<th>ībō</th>
<th>feram</th>
<th>ferar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eris</td>
<td>volēs</td>
<td>nōlēs</td>
<td>mālēs</td>
<td>ībis</td>
<td>ferēs</td>
<td>ferēris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit</td>
<td>volēt</td>
<td>nōlet</td>
<td>mālet</td>
<td>ībit</td>
<td>ferēt</td>
<td>ferētur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erimus</td>
<td>volēmus</td>
<td>nōlēmus</td>
<td>mālēmus</td>
<td>ībimus</td>
<td>ferēmus</td>
<td>ferēmūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eritis</td>
<td>volētis</td>
<td>nōlētis</td>
<td>mālētis</td>
<td>ībitis</td>
<td>ferētis</td>
<td>ferēminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erunt</td>
<td>volent</td>
<td>nōlent</td>
<td>mālent</td>
<td>ībunt</td>
<td>ferent</td>
<td>ferentur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>fuī</th>
<th>volui</th>
<th>nōlui</th>
<th>mālui</th>
<th>īi</th>
<th>tuli</th>
<th>lātus, -a sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuistī</td>
<td>voluistī</td>
<td>nōluistī</td>
<td>māluistī</td>
<td>īsti</td>
<td>tulistī</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -es</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuit</td>
<td>voluit</td>
<td>nōluit</td>
<td>māluit</td>
<td>īit</td>
<td>tuit</td>
<td>lātī, -ae sumus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuimus</td>
<td>voluimus</td>
<td>nōluimus</td>
<td>mālūimus</td>
<td>īimus</td>
<td>tulumus</td>
<td>lāti, -ae estis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuistis</td>
<td>voluistis</td>
<td>nōluistis</td>
<td>māluistis</td>
<td>īistis</td>
<td>tulistis</td>
<td>lātī, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuērunt</td>
<td>voluērunt</td>
<td>nōluērunt</td>
<td>māluērunt</td>
<td>īērunt</td>
<td>tulerunt</td>
<td>lātī, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>fuerām</th>
<th>volueram</th>
<th>nōlueram</th>
<th>mālueram</th>
<th>ieram</th>
<th>tuleram</th>
<th>lātus, -a eram</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerās</td>
<td>voluerās</td>
<td>nōluerās</td>
<td>māluerās</td>
<td>ierās</td>
<td>tulerās</td>
<td>lātus, -a erās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerat</td>
<td>voluerat</td>
<td>nōluerat</td>
<td>māluerat</td>
<td>ierat</td>
<td>tulerat</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um erat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerāmus</td>
<td>voluerāmus</td>
<td>nōluerāmus</td>
<td>māluerāmus</td>
<td>ierāmus</td>
<td>tulerāmus</td>
<td>lāti, -ae erāmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerātis</td>
<td>voluerātis</td>
<td>nōluerātis</td>
<td>māluerātis</td>
<td>ierātis</td>
<td>tulerātis</td>
<td>lātī, -ae erātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerant</td>
<td>voluerant</td>
<td>nōluerant</td>
<td>māluerant</td>
<td>ierant</td>
<td>tulerant</td>
<td>lātī, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>fuerō</th>
<th>voluerō</th>
<th>nōluerō</th>
<th>māluerō</th>
<th>ierō</th>
<th>tulerō</th>
<th>lātus, -a erō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>volueris</td>
<td>nōlueris</td>
<td>mālueris</td>
<td>ieris</td>
<td>tuleris</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -erīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>voluerit</td>
<td>nōluerit</td>
<td>māluerit</td>
<td>ierit</td>
<td>tulerit</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um erīt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerimus</td>
<td>voluerimus</td>
<td>nōluerimus</td>
<td>māluerimus</td>
<td>ierimus</td>
<td>tulerimus</td>
<td>lātī, -ae erimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueritis</td>
<td>volueritis</td>
<td>nōlueritis</td>
<td>mālueritis</td>
<td>ieritis</td>
<td>tuleritis</td>
<td>lātī, -ae erītis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerint</td>
<td>voluerint</td>
<td>nōluerint</td>
<td>māluerint</td>
<td>ierint</td>
<td>tulerint</td>
<td>lātī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### PARTICIPLES – IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sum</th>
<th>Volō</th>
<th>Nōlō</th>
<th>Mālō</th>
<th>Eō</th>
<th>Ferō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>volēns, -ntis</td>
<td>nōlēns, -ntis</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>iēns, euntis</td>
<td>ferēns, -ntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>futūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>itūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVES – IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sum</th>
<th>Volō</th>
<th>Nōlō</th>
<th>Mālō</th>
<th>Eō</th>
<th>Ferō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>velle</td>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td>målle</td>
<td>ire</td>
<td>ferre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>fuisse</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
<td>nōluisse</td>
<td>måluisse</td>
<td>ìsse</td>
<td>tulisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>futūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>itūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>itum ìri</td>
<td>lātum ìri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Deponent Verbs

### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third I-stem</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnor</td>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>patior</td>
<td>mentior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāris</td>
<td>verēris</td>
<td>sequēris</td>
<td>pateris</td>
<td>mentēris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātur</td>
<td>verētur</td>
<td>sequitur</td>
<td>patitur</td>
<td>mentītur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāmur</td>
<td>verēmur</td>
<td>sequimur</td>
<td>patimur</td>
<td>mentīmurus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāmini</td>
<td>verēmini</td>
<td>sequimini</td>
<td>patimini</td>
<td>mentīmini</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāntur</td>
<td>verentur</td>
<td>sequuntur</td>
<td>patiuntur</td>
<td>mentiuntur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnābar</td>
<td>verēbar</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>patiēbar</td>
<td>mentiēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābāris</td>
<td>verēbāris</td>
<td>sequēbāris</td>
<td>patiēbāris</td>
<td>mentiēbāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābātur</td>
<td>verēbātur</td>
<td>sequēbātur</td>
<td>patiēbātur</td>
<td>mentiēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābāmur</td>
<td>verēbāmur</td>
<td>sequēbāmur</td>
<td>patiēbāmur</td>
<td>mentiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābāmini</td>
<td>verēbāmini</td>
<td>sequēbāmini</td>
<td>patiēbāmini</td>
<td>mentiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābāntur</td>
<td>verēbāntur</td>
<td>sequēbāntur</td>
<td>patiēbāntur</td>
<td>mentiēbāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnābor</td>
<td>verēbor</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>patiar</td>
<td>mentiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāberis</td>
<td>verēberis</td>
<td>sequēris</td>
<td>patiēris</td>
<td>mentiēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābitur</td>
<td>verēbitur</td>
<td>sequētur</td>
<td>patiētur</td>
<td>mentiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābimur</td>
<td>verēbimur</td>
<td>sequēmur</td>
<td>patiēmur</td>
<td>mentiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābimini</td>
<td>verēbimini</td>
<td>sequēminī</td>
<td>patiēminī</td>
<td>mentiēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnābuntur</td>
<td>verēbuntur</td>
<td>sequentur</td>
<td>patientur</td>
<td>mentientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a sum</td>
<td>veritus, -a sum</td>
<td>secūtus, -a sum</td>
<td>passus, -a sum</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a es</td>
<td>veritus, -a es</td>
<td>secūtus, -a es</td>
<td>passus, -a es</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a, -um est</td>
<td>veritus, -a, -um est</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um est</td>
<td>passus, -a, -um est</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a, -um est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae sumus</td>
<td>verīti, -ae sumus</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae sumus</td>
<td>passi, -ae sumus</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae estis</td>
<td>verīti, -ae estis</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae estis</td>
<td>passi, -ae estis</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>verīti, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>passi, -ae, -a sunt</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae, -a sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a erās</td>
<td>veritus, -a erās</td>
<td>secūtus, -a erās</td>
<td>passus, -a erās</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a, -um erat</td>
<td>veritus, -a, -um erat</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um erat</td>
<td>passus, -a, -um erat</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a, -um erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae erāmus</td>
<td>verīti, -ae erāmus</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae erāmus</td>
<td>passī, -ae erāmus</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae erātis</td>
<td>verīti, -ae erātis</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae erātis</td>
<td>passī, -ae erātis</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>verīti, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>passī, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae, -a erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a erō</td>
<td>veritus, -a erō</td>
<td>secūtus, -a erō</td>
<td>passus, -a erō</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a cris</td>
<td>veritus, -a cris</td>
<td>secūtus, -a cris</td>
<td>passus, -a cris</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a cris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātus, -a, -um erit</td>
<td>veritus, -a, -um erit</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um erit</td>
<td>passus, -a, -um erit</td>
<td>mentitūs, -a, -um erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae erīmus</td>
<td>verīti, -ae erīmus</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae erīmus</td>
<td>passī, -ae erīmus</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae erīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae erītis</td>
<td>verīti, -ae erītis</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae erītis</td>
<td>passī, -ae erītis</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae erītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>verīti, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>secūtī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>passī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>mentītī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third 1-stem</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>cōnāns, -ntis</td>
<td>verēns, -ntis</td>
<td>sequēns, -ntis</td>
<td>patiēns, -ntis</td>
<td>mentiēns, -ntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>cōnātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>veritus, -a, -um</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um</td>
<td>passus, -a, -um</td>
<td>mentitus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>cōnātūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>veritūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>secūtūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>passūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>mentitūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INFINITIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third 1-stem</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>cōnārī</td>
<td>verērī</td>
<td>sequī</td>
<td>patī</td>
<td>mentīrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>cōnātus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>veritus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>passus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>mentitus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>cōnātūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>veritūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>secūtūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>passūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>mentitūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Five Noun Declensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First (F / M)</th>
<th>Second (M / N)</th>
<th>Third (M / F / N)</th>
<th>Third I-stem (M / F / N)</th>
<th>Fourth (M / N)</th>
<th>Fifth (M / F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>puella</td>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>verbum</td>
<td>nāvis</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>gradus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>verbī</td>
<td>nāvī</td>
<td>marī</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>verbō</td>
<td>nāvē</td>
<td>marī</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puellam</td>
<td>dominum</td>
<td>verbum</td>
<td>nāvem</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>gradum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puellā</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>verbō</td>
<td>nāve</td>
<td>marī</td>
<td>gradū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>dominī</td>
<td>verba</td>
<td>nāvēs</td>
<td>maria</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puellārum</td>
<td>dominōrum</td>
<td>verbōrum</td>
<td>nāvium</td>
<td>marīum</td>
<td>graduum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puellīs</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>verbīs</td>
<td>nāvibus</td>
<td>marībus</td>
<td>gradibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puellās</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>verba</td>
<td>nāvīs</td>
<td>marīa</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puellīs</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>verba</td>
<td>nāve</td>
<td>marīa</td>
<td>gradū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Adjective Declensions

### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonōrūm</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sacer</td>
<td>sacra</td>
<td>sacrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sacrī</td>
<td>sacrae</td>
<td>sacrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
<td>sacrae</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sacrum</td>
<td>sacram</td>
<td>sacrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
<td>sacrā</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sacrī</td>
<td>sacrae</td>
<td>sacra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sacrōrum</td>
<td>sacrārum</td>
<td>sacrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sacrōs</td>
<td>sacrās</td>
<td>sacra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>miser</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miseram</td>
<td>miserum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserā</td>
<td>miserō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>miserōrum</td>
<td>miserārum</td>
<td>miserōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>miserōs</td>
<td>miserās</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>miserōs</td>
<td>miseris</td>
<td>miseris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# THIRD DECLENSION

## Three Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Two Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td>omnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td>omnis, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## One Termination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>felix</td>
<td>felix</td>
<td>felicēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>felicis</td>
<td>felicis</td>
<td>felicum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>felicī</td>
<td>felicī</td>
<td>felīcibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>felicem</td>
<td>felix</td>
<td>felīcis, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>felici</td>
<td>felici</td>
<td>felīcibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Participle Declensions

## First Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amantēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amantis</td>
<td>amantis</td>
<td>amantium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amantem</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amantīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Second Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>monēns</td>
<td>monēns</td>
<td>monentēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>monentis</td>
<td>monentis</td>
<td>monentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>monentī</td>
<td>monentī</td>
<td>monentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>monentīs</td>
<td>audiēns</td>
<td>monentīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>monentī</td>
<td>audiēns</td>
<td>monentīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Third Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dūcēns</td>
<td>dūcēns</td>
<td>dūcentēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dūcentis</td>
<td>dūcentis</td>
<td>dūcentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dūcentī</td>
<td>dūcentī</td>
<td>dūcentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dūcentem</td>
<td>dūcens</td>
<td>dūcentīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dūcentī</td>
<td>dūcentī</td>
<td>dūcentibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Third Conjugation I-stem

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>capiēns</td>
<td>capiēns</td>
<td>capientēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>capientis</td>
<td>capientis</td>
<td>capientium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>capientī</td>
<td>capientī</td>
<td>capientibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>capientīs</td>
<td>capiēns</td>
<td>capientīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>capientī</td>
<td>capiēns</td>
<td>capientīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Fourth Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>audiēns</td>
<td>audiēns</td>
<td>audientēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>audientis</td>
<td>audientis</td>
<td>audientium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>audientī</td>
<td>audientī</td>
<td>audientibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>audientīs</td>
<td>audiēns</td>
<td>audientīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>audientī</td>
<td>audientī</td>
<td>audientibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Comparison of Adjectives

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>longior</td>
<td>longius</td>
<td>longiorēs</td>
<td>longiōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>longiōris</td>
<td>longiōris</td>
<td>longiōrum</td>
<td>longiōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>longiōri</td>
<td>longiōri</td>
<td>longiōribus</td>
<td>longiōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>longiōrem</td>
<td>longius</td>
<td>longiōrés</td>
<td>longiōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>longiōre</td>
<td>longiōre</td>
<td>longiōribus</td>
<td>longiōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um</td>
<td>peior, peius</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>maior, maius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sg. plús (neuter noun only)</td>
<td>plúrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pl. plúres, plúra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comparison of Adverbs

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ácriter</td>
<td>ácrius</td>
<td>àcerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altē</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapienter</td>
<td>sapientius</td>
<td>sapientissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male</td>
<td>peius</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>maximē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum</td>
<td>plús</td>
<td>plúrimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diū</td>
<td>diātius</td>
<td>diātissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for a long time | for a longer time | for the longest time
# Pronoun Declensions

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>2nd person</th>
<th>3rd person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>tú</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meī</td>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>tibi</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mé</td>
<td>té</td>
<td>eum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mé</td>
<td>té</td>
<td>có</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nostrum, nostrī</td>
<td>vestrum, vestri</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>eis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>eōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>eis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>2nd person</th>
<th>3rd person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meī</td>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>tibi</td>
<td>sibi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mé</td>
<td>té</td>
<td>sē (sēsē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mé</td>
<td>té</td>
<td>sē (sēsē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nostrī</td>
<td>vestrī</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>sibi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>sē (sēsē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td>sē (sēsē)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quiū</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quiī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
<td>quārum</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuiū</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quōs</td>
<td>quās</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quào</td>
<td>quà</td>
<td>quào</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Demonstrative

#### Hic, Haec, Hoc

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huīc</td>
<td>huīc</td>
<td>huīc</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ille, Illa, Illud

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illae</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
<td>illārum</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>illōs</td>
<td>illās</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Is, Ea, Id

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eae</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eārum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eīs</td>
<td>eīs</td>
<td>eīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eās</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eīs</td>
<td>eīs</td>
<td>eīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Īdem, Eadem, Idem

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>īdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>īdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eōrundem</td>
<td>eārundem</td>
<td>eōrundem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
<td>eīsdem</td>
<td>eīsdem</td>
<td>eīsdem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eīsdem</td>
<td>eīsdem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>eōsdem</td>
<td>eāsdem</td>
<td>eīsdem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Iste, Ista, Istud

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istae</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>istīus</td>
<td>istīus</td>
<td>istīus</td>
<td>istōrum</td>
<td>istārum</td>
<td>istōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istud</td>
<td>istōs</td>
<td>istās</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Intensive

Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Roman Numeral</th>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ūnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>primus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>duo, duae, duo</td>
<td>secundus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>trēs, trīa</td>
<td>tertīus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quārtus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>quīnque</td>
<td>quīntus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>VI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sexītus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>VII</td>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septīmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>octo</td>
<td>octāvus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IX</td>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nŏnus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>decimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centēsimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Classified Vocabulary

Verbs

1st Conjugation

amō, amāre, amāvi, amātum, like, love
conōr, conāre, conātus sum, try, attempt
cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātum, sing
clāmō, clāmare, clāmāti, shout
erro, errāre, errātum, make a mistake, wander
laudō, laudāre, laudātum, praise
monstrō, monstrāre, monstrāvī, monstrātum, show
nuntiō, nuntiāre, nuntiāvī, nuntiātum, announce, report
parō, parāre, parāvi, parātum, prepare
portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum, carry
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum, think, consider
rovō, rovāre, rovāvī, rovātum, ask
servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum, serve, save, guard, watch over
sto, stāre, stetit, statum, stand
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum, call
2nd Conjugation

ardō, ardeō, arsī, arsūrus, burn, be inflamed
deō, déleō, dedī, datum, destroy
doceō, docere, dēxī, dictum, grant, teach
habēō, habēre, habuī, habitum, have, hold; consider
iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussum, order, command, bid
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain, stay
moneō, monēre, monēvī, monētum, advise, warn
moveō, movēre, mōvī, motum, move
sedēō, sedere, sēdēti, sessum, sit
teneō, tenēre, tenētum, hold, contain
terreō, terrēre, terruēris, territum, frighten
timēō, timere, timuī, timum, be afraid of, fear
vereō, verēri, verītum, fear, respect
video, videō, vidēre, vidēritur, see, (pass.) seem, appear, be seen

3rd Conjugation

agō, agere, ēgī, actum, drive, do, treat, deal with
cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, see, decide, discern, perceive
consistō, -ere, consisti, consistutum, stop
consistuō, -ere, consistui, constitutum, decide, determine, establish
contendō, contendere, contendit, contentum, compete, hurry, make effort, march, strive
currō, -ere, currūri, currusum, run, hasten
dicō, dicerē, dixī, dictum, say, speak, tell
ducō, ducere, dūxī, ductum, lead
excédō, excédere, excessi, excessum, depart, go out
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, carry on, conduct

incédō, incédere, incessi, incessum, go in
labō, labī, lapsus sum, collapse, slip
legō, legere, légī, lectionem, choose, pick out, read
mittō, mittère, misi, missum, send
petō, petere, petivī, petitum, seek, ask for
ponō, pōnere, posui, positum, place, put, set up
regō, regere, réxī, réctum, rule
relinquō, relinquere, relinquī, reliquitum, leave behind, leave
scribō, scribere, scriptum, write
sequor, sequi, secututum, follow
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum, rise, stretch upward, swell
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tectum, cover, conceal, shelter
tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, extend, proceed, stretch out
trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, drag
vincō, vincerē, vicī, victum, conquer, defeat
vivō, vivere, víxī, vitum, live
volvō, volvere, volvī, volútum, roll

3rd Conjugation 1-stem

accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, receive
capiō, capere, cápi, captum, take, capture, seize,
faciō, facere, fēci, factum, do, make
fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugītūrus, flee, avoid, run away
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum, begin
inspicō, inspicere, inspexī, inspectum, look into or upon
interficīo, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, inter interfere, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, kill
morior, morī, mortuus sum, die
patior, pati, passus sum, endure, experience, suffer

4th Conjugation

audiō, auditūre, audīvi, audītum, hear, listen to
mentior, mentiriti, mentitus sum, tell a lie
muniō, munire, munīvī, munītum, fortify
pānnō, pānīre, pānīvī, pānitium, punish
sentior, sentire, sensi, sensum, feel, perceive
veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, come

Irregular

absum, abesse, absīus, be away
addum, adesse, adduī, addūtus, be present
do, dare, dēdī, datum, give
cō, īre, iīvī, itum, go
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, bring, carry, endure
mālō, malle, māluī, —, prefer
nōlō, nolle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, not to want, not to wish
possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can
referō, referre, rettuli, relatum, bring back, refer
subēō, subire, subīi (subīvī), substitutum, undergo
sum, esse, fūi, futūrus, be
volō, velle, volui, —, want, wish
### Nouns

**1st Declension: Feminine**

- aqua, -ae f., water
- cura, -ae f., care, concern, worry
- dea, -ae f., goddess
- epistula, -ae f., letter
- fama, -ae f., rumor, reputation, glory
- filia, -ae f., daughter
- flamma, -ae f., flame
- fortuna, -ae f., fortune, luck
- gratia, -ae f., favor; (pl.) thanks
- hora, -ae f., hour
- invidia, -ae f., envy, hatred
- ira, -ae f., anger, wrath
- lacrima, -ae f., tear
- ora, -ae f., shore, edge, rim
- patria, -ae, native land
- poena, -ae f., punishment
- porta, -ae f., gate
- puella, -ae f., girl
- regina, -ae f., queen
- silva, -ae f., forest, woods
- umbra, -ae f., shadow, ghost
- via, -ae f., road, way, life

**1st Declension: Masculine**

- agricola, -ae m., farmer
- incola, -ae m., inhabitant
- nauta, -ae m., sailor
- pirata, -ae m., pirate
- poeta, -ae m., poet
- scriba, -ae m., secretary, writer

**2nd Declension: Masculine**

- ager, agri m., field
- animus, -i m., spirit, mind, (pl.) bravery
- annus, -i m., year
- campus, -i m., field, plain, playing field
- deus, -i m., god
- discipulus, -i m., student
- dominus, -i m., master
- equus, -i m., horse
- filius, -i m., son
- liber, libri m., book
- locus, -i m. (loca, -orum n. pl.), place
- magister, magistri m., teacher
- murus, -i m., wall
- nuntius, -i m., messenger
- oculus, -i m., eye
- puer, pueri m., boy
- servus, -i m., slave
- socius, -i m., ally

**2nd Declension: Neuter**

- aurum, -i n., gold
- bellum, -i n., war
- caelum, -i n., heaven, sky
- donum, -i n., gift
- factum, -i n., deed
- fatum, -i n., fate
- ferrum, -i n., iron, sword
- imperium, -i n., power, rule
- regnum, -i n., kingdom
- saxum, -i n., rock, stone
- telum, -i n., javelin, weapon
- verbum, -i n., word

**2nd Declension: Neuter Plurals**

- arma, -orum n. pl., arms
- castra, -orum n. pl., camp

**3rd Declension: Masculine**

- consul, consulis m., consul
- dux, ducis m., leader
- finis, -is (-ium) m., end, (pl.) territory
- frater, fratis m., brother
- furor, -oris m., rage, fury
- homō, hominis m., human, man
- hostis, hostis (-ium) m., enemy
- ignis, -is (-ium) m., fire
- labor, laboris m., work, hardship, labor
- miles, militis m., soldier
- montes, montis (-ium) m., mountain
- nemo, neminis m., no one, nobody
- pater, patris m., father
- pes, pedis m., foot
- pontis, pontis (-ium) m., bridge
- rex, regis m., king

**3rd Declension: Feminine**

- gens, gentis (-ium) f., nation, tribe
- lex, legis f., law
- lux, lucis f., light
- mater, matris f., mother
- mensus, mensus (-ium) f., mind, intention
- mors, mortis f., (-iun), death
- navis, navis (-ium) f., ship
- nox, noctis (-ium) f., night
- pars, partis (-ium) m., part, direction
- soror, sororis f., sister
- urbs, urbis (-ium) f., city
- virgo, virginis f., maiden
- vox, vocis f., voice

somnus, -i m., sleep
umerus, -i m., shoulder
ventus, -i m., wind
vir, viri m., man
3rd Declension: Masculine and Feminine

cīvis, cīvis (-ium) m. / f., citizen
comes, comitis m. / f., companion
cōniu̇x, coniugis m. / f., spouse

3rd Declension: Neuter

agmen, agminis n., column (of men)
caput, capitis n., head
carmen, carminis n., song
corpus, corporis n., body

genus, -eris n., kind, sort

itēs, iūris n., journey, road, way

īūmen, lūminis n., light

mare, maris (-ium) n., sea

moenia, -ium n. pl., walls

nōmen, nōminis n., name

opus, operis n., task, work

pectus, pectoris n., breast, chest, heart

scelus, sceleris n., crime

sīdus, sīderis n., star

tempus, tempōris n., time

4th Declension: Masculine

cāsus, -ūs m., chance, fall, misfortune

exercitus, -ūs m., army

fructus, -ūs m., benefit, enjoyment, fruit

gradus, -ūs m., step

ictus, -ūs m., blow, strike

senātus, -ūs m., senate

ūsus, -ūs m., application, practice, use, skill

4th Declension: Feminine

domus, -ūs, f., home, household

manus, -ūs f., hand

4th Declension: Neuter

cornū, -ūs n., horn

5th Declension

diēs, -ei m., day

fidēs, -ei f., loyalty, faith

rēs, rei f., thing, affair, matter

rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae f., state, republic

speciēs, -ei f., appearance, sight

spēs, spei f., hope

Indeclinable

nihil n., nothing

Proper Nouns

Asia, -ae f., Asia Minor (modern Turkey)
Augustus, -i m., Augustus Caesar
Caesar, Caesaris m., Gaius Julius Caesar
Cicerō, Ciceronis m., Marcus Tullius Cicero
Gaius, -i m., Gaius Caesar
Italia, -ae f., Italy
Iuppiter, Iovis m., Jupiter
Livius, Livii m., Titus Livius
Nāsō, Nāsōnis m., Publius Ovidius Nāsō (Ovid)
Numa, -ae m., Numa Pompiulus
Olympus, -i m., Mount Olympus
Pompeius, Pompeiī m., Pompey
Pythagoras, -ae m., Pythagoras
Rōma, -ae f., Rome
Vergilius, Vergiliī m., Publius Vergilius Maro (Vergil)

Adjectives

1st and 2nd Declension

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick

alius, -a, -um, another, other

alter, altera, altrum, the other (of two)

altus, -a, -um, deep, high, tall

amicus, -a, -um, friendly

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient

ätēr, ātra, ātrum, black, dark

bonus, -a, -um, good

cārus, -a, -um, dear

cārus, -a, -um, exhausted, tired

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable

īrātus, -a, -um, angry

laetus, -a, -um, happy, joyful

līber, lībera, līberum, free

longus, -a, -um, long

magnus, -a, -um, large

malus, -a, -um, evil

maximus, -a, -um, most

meus, -a, -um, mine, my

minimus, -a, -um, smallest, least

miser, misera, miserum, unhappy, wretched

multus, -a, -um, much, many

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither

noster, nostra, nostrum, our

novus, -a, -um, new

nullus, -a, -um, no, not any

optimus, -a, -um, best, excellent

parvus, -a, -um, little, small

pauci, -ae, -a, few

pessimus, -a, -um, worst

pius, -a, -um, devoted, dutiful, loyal

plurimus, -a, -um, most, very many

primus, -a, -um, first

proximus, -a, -um, next, nearest

pūblicus, -a, -um, public

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful

sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy
secundus, -a, -um, second
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, sole
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their (own)
tertius, -a, -um, third
tōtus, -a, -um, entire, whole
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours
ullus, -a, -um, any
unus, -a, -um, one
uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)
vacuus, -a, -um, empty
vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours

3rd Declension: 3 Terminations
ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, keen, sharp
celēr, celeris, celere, quick, swift

3rd Declension: 2 Terminations
brevis, -e, brief, short
difficilis, -e, difficult
dissimilis, -e, dissimilar, unlike
dulcis, -e, sweet
facilis, -e, easy
fortis, -e, strong, brave
gracilis, -e, graceful, slender
gravis, -e, heavy, serious
humilis, -e, humble, low
maior, maius, greater
melior, melius, better
minor, minus, smaller, less
omnis, -e, all, every
peior, peius, worse
similis, -e, like, similar
tristis, -e, sad
ūtilis, -e, useful

3rd Declension: 1 Termination
audāx, audācis, bold
fēlīx, fēlīcis, happy
ingēns, ingentis, huge, vast
sapiēns, sapientis, wise

Proper Adjectives
Gallus, -a, -um, Gaul, Gallic
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman

Demonstrative
hic, haec, hoc, this, these
īdem, cadem, idem, same
ille, illa, illud, that, those
is, ea, id, that, this
iste, ista, istud, that (of yours)

Intensive
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, himself, herself, itself, themselves, myself,
yourself, yourselves, yourselves; in person; very

Adverbs
aegrē, painfully, with difficulty
bene, well
crās, tomorrow
diu, for a long time
heri, yesterday
hic, here
hodiē, today
ibi, there
longē, far
magis (compar. of magnopere), more
magnopere, greatly
maximē, very greatly
modo, just, only
nōn, not
numquam, never
nunc, now
parum, too little
primō, at first
quam, than, (+ superlative), as...as possible
quondam, at one time, formerly, once
saepē, often
semper, always
statim, at once, immediately
subitō, suddenly
tamen, nevertheless, yet
tandem, at length, finally
tum, at that time, then
tunc, at that time, then
vix, hardly, scarcely

Prepositions
With the Ablative
ā, away from, by, from
ab, away from, by, from
cum, with, along with
dē, down from, about, concerning
e, from, out of
ex, from, out of
in, in, on
prō, in front of, on behalf of
sine, without
sub, under
With the Accusative

ad, at, to, towards
ante, before
circum, around
in, against, into, onto
inter, among, between
ob, because of, on account of
per, through
post, behind, after
propter, on account of, because of

Conjunctions

ac, and
antequam, before
atque, and
aut, or
aut...aut, either...or
autem, but, however, moreover
dum, while
enim, for
et, and
etiam, also, even
igitur, therefore
iam, already, now
nam, for
nec, and...not, nor
neque, and...not, nor
neque...neque, neither...nor
nōn modo ... sed etiam, not only...but also
postquam, after
-que, and
quod, because
sed, but
tamen, nevertheless, yet
ubi, when, where
ut (+ ind.), as

Numerals

Cardinals
únus, -a, -um, one
duo, duae, duo, two
trēs, tria, three
quattuor, four
quīnquē, five
sex, six
septem, seven
octo, eight
novem, nine
decem, ten
centum, hundred

Ordinals
primus, -a, -um, first
secundus, -a, -um, second

Idioms
bellum gerere, wage war
dē (+ abl.) agere, talk about
gratiās agere (+ dat.), thank, give thanks
vitam agere, lead a life
iter facere, make a journey, march
poenās dare, pay the penalty
Nouns: The nominative singular of each noun is given followed by the genitive singular. For regular nouns of the first, second, fourth and fifth declension, only the genitive singular ending is given (e.g. mūrus, -ī). Where the stem cannot be determined from the nominative singular form, as in some second declension nouns and in the third declension, the full form of the genitive singular is given. Third I-stem nouns are indicated in the lists by (-ium).

Adjectives: Adjectives whose stems can be determined from the nominative singular masculine form appear as the nominative masculine singular with the endings for the other genders (e.g., bonus, -a, -um; trīstis, -e).

Adjectives whose stems cannot be determined from the nominative singular masculine are written out fully: all three genders in the case of the adjectives of three or two terminations (e.g., āter, ātris, ātre); the nominative and genitive singulars in the case of adjectives of one termination (e.g., fēlīx, fēlīcis).

Verbs: The first person singular present indicative active of each verb is listed. If the verb is regular (i.e. forms its stems like amō, moneō, audiō), a numeral follows to indicate its conjugation (laudō (1), I praise). If the verb is irregular, its principal parts are given.

Words introduced in *New First Steps In Latin* are followed by an asterisk (*). Words introduced in *New Second Steps in Latin* chapters are marked with the lesson number in Roman numerals in square brackets [I]. Words used in the reading lessons are shown as “P” and the paragraph number in which they occur [P1].

LATIN – ENGLISH VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab (+ abl.), away from, by, from *</td>
<td>alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two) [XXIX]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abscessō, ere, -cēs, -cessum, cut away, cut off [P5]</td>
<td>altus, -a, -um, deep, high, tall *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absum, abesse, āfūī, āfutūrus, be away [XXIV]</td>
<td>amicus, -a, -um, friendly *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessum, approach, come up to [P7]</td>
<td>amicus, -i m., friend *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive *</td>
<td>amō (1), like, love *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accurāre, accurrere, accūrsūs, run to [P7]</td>
<td>Andromeda, -ae f., Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus and Cassiope, saved by Perseus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, keen, sharp *</td>
<td>anguis, -is m., -f., serpent, snake [P4]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acrēs, -i m., Acrisius, king of Argos</td>
<td>animus, -i m., mind, spirit; (pl.) bravery [XIII]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad (+ acc.), to, towards, at *</td>
<td>annus, -i m., year *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductum, lead to [P2]</td>
<td>ante (+ acc.), before [VIII]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adeō, adire, adīi (-īvī), aditum, go to, go toward [P9]</td>
<td>antequam, conj., before [VII]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adficiō, -ere, -fēctum, affect, do to, move [P9]</td>
<td>antiquus, -a, -um, ancient [XXIV]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhūc, adv., still, to this point, yet [P1]</td>
<td>Apollo, Apollinis m., Apollo, the god of prophecy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addīgō (1), kind, tie [P7]</td>
<td>aqua, -ae f., water *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adsum, adesse, adfūī, adfutūrus, be present [XXIV]</td>
<td>arca, -ae f., box, chest [P1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adulēscēns, adulēscentis m./f., youth [P3]</td>
<td>ardeo, ardère, arsūs, burn, be inflamed, blaze [I]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick *</td>
<td>arma, -ōrum n. pl., arms [IV]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aegre, adv., painfully, with difficulty [VI]</td>
<td>ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum, ascend, Asia, -ae f., Asia Minor, (modern Turkey)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aecris n., bronze, copper [P4]</td>
<td>at, but [XVII]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aethiops, -pis m., Ethiopian, people of inland Africa</td>
<td>ātēr, ātra, ātrum, black, dark *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick *</td>
<td>atque, conj., and [XVII]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aegus, -is m., field *</td>
<td>audāx, audācis, bold *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agmus, agminis n., column (of men) [XVI]</td>
<td>audiō (4), hear, listen to *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agō, agere, ēgī, actum, drive, do, treat, deal with [III]</td>
<td>Augustus, -i m., Augustus Caesar, Roman emperor (63 B.C. - A.D. 14)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agricola, -ae m., farmer *</td>
<td>aurum, -i n., gold [XXIII]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alius, -a, -um, another, other [XXIX]</td>
<td>aut, conj., or [II]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alternus, -a, -um, other (of two) [XXIX]</td>
<td>aut…aut, conj., either…or [II]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
E

c, ex (+ abl.), from, out of *
edō, edere, ēdīdī, ēditum, give out [P8]
edūcō, edūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, lead out, unseat [P8]
egō, meī, I [II]
enim, conj., for [I]
eō, adv., to that place [P10]
eō, ire, ī / īvī, itum, go [XXVI]
epistula, -ae f., letter *
equus, i m., horse [I]
errō (1), make a mistake, wander *
et, conj., and *
etiam, conj., also, even [I]
nōn modo ... sed etiam, conj., not only ... but also [II]
ex, + abl.) from, out of *
exanimō (1), exhaust [III]
exādō, exādere, incessī, incessum, depart [XI]
exitō (1), awaken, rouse [P5]
excīgō, excīgere, excessī, exactum, army *
exspectō (1), look out [P7]
extrahō, extrahere, extrāxī, extrāctum, drag out [P6]
exūō, exuere, exuī, exūtum, put off, take off [P9]

F
facilis, -e, easy *
faciō, facere, factum, do, make *
iter facere, make a journey, march *
facium, -i n., deed *
falx, falcis, f., sickle, sword (curved) [P4]
fāma, -ae f., rumor, story; reputation; glory [III]
fātum, -ī n., fate [XXIII]
felix, fēlicis, happy *
fūrō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, bring, carry, endure [XIX]
fūrō, īre, īvī, itum, go [XXVI]

G
Gaius, Gaiī m., common Roman name; Gaius Caesar, Roman emperor (A.D. 12 - 41)
galea, -ae f., helmet [P4]
gaudium, i n., joy, gladness [P9]
gēns, gentis (-ium) f., nation, tribe *
genius, -eris n., kind, sort [VIII]
gerō, gerere, gestum, carry on, conduct *
bellum gerere, wage war *
gladius, -i m., sword [P8]
Gorgo(n), Gorgonis f., Gorgon, three monstrous daughters of Phorcys and Ceto with hair of snakes
gracilis, -e, graceful, slender [IX]
gradus, -ūs m., step *
Graeae, -arum f., Graeae, three sisters of the Gorgons
gratia, -ae f., favor; in plural, thanks [III]
gratiās agere (+ dat.), thank, give thanks [III]
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing [P3]
gravis, -e, heavy, serious *
gravitā, -e, gravity, heaviness [X]
habēo (2), have, hold; consider [I]
habitō (1), dwell, live [P3]
Hammon, Hammonis, m., Hammon, Egyptian god
harēna, -ae f., sand [P2]
herēs, hostis (-ium) m., enemy [II]
hic, adv., here [XII]
hic, haec, hoc, this, these [VI]
hodiē, adv., today [III]
homō, hominis m., human, man [XVII]
honor, honōris m., honor, office
hōra, -ae f., hour *
horribilis, -e, horrible [P4]
hospes, hostis (-ium) m., enemy [II]
hūc, adv., thither, to this place [P10]
humilis, -e, humble, low [IX]

I
iam, adv., already, now [XXII]
ibi, adv., there [XII]
ictus, -ūs m., blow, strike [XXI]
idem, eadem, idem, same [I]
idoneus, -a, -um, suitable [XXVIII]
igitur, conj., therefore [VII]
ignāvus, -a, -um, idle, lazy [P3]
ignis, -is (-ium) m., fire [II]
ignōrō (1), have no knowledge of [P4]
ille, illa, illud, that, those [XI]
imperium, -i n., power, rule [XXIII]
impetus, -ūs m., attack [P8]
in (+ abl.), in, on *
in (+ acc.), into, onto, against *
incēdo, incēdere, incessi, incessum, go in [XI]
cipiō, incipere, incipiō, inceptum, begin [IV]
inclūdō, includere, inclusi, inclusum, enclose, imprison, shut up [P1]
incola, -ae m., inhabitant *
induō, induere, indiu, indūtum, clothe, put on [P4]
ineō, inire, inni (innivi), initiun, go in [P11]
infans, infantis (-ium) m./f., infant [P1]
inflcio, inficere, infecti, infectum, dye, stain [P8]
ingens, ingentis, huge, vast *
intrumpō, intrumpire, inrupti, inruptum, burst in [P10]
inspiciō, inspicer, inspectum, look into or upon [XVII]
insula, -ae f., island [P2]
inter ( + acc.), among, between [VIII]
interficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, kill *
inveniō, invenire, inventum, come upon, find [P2]
invidia, -ae f., envy, hatred, jealousy [III]
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves; in person; very [XXVI]
irā, -ae f., anger, wrath *
irātus, -a, -um, angry *
is, ea, id, be, she, it, that, this, them, these [I]
iste, ista, istud, this, these [I]
itt, iūrī, n., journey, road, way *
iter, facere, make a journey, march *
iterum, adv., again [P8]
jubeō, iubère, iussi, iussum, order, command, bid [XIII]
Jupitert, lovis m., Jupiter [P1]
lūs, iūris n., law, right *
luvēnīs, -is m., youth [P3]

L
labor, labōris m., work, labor, hardship [XIX]
labor, labī, lapsus sum, collapse, slip [XVIII]
lacrima, -ae f., tear [XIX]
lactus, -ae f., happy, joyful [XXIV]
Larisa, -ae f., Larissa, city in Thessaly
laudā ī (1), praise *
legō, legere, lēgī, lectum, choose, pick out, read [XXIII]
lex, légis f., law *
liber, liberi m., book *
ligneus, -a, -um, wooden [P1]
litus, litoris n., shore, coast, beach *
Livius, -i m., Titus Livius (Livy), Roman historian (59 B.C. – A.D. 17)
locus, -i m., (loca, -orum n. pl.), place [IV]
longē, adv., far [VI]
longus, -ae, -um, long *
lādus, -i m., game, sport [P11]
lāmen, lūminis n., light [XVI]
lūna, lūnae f., moon [XII]
lūx, lūcis f., light *

M
magicus, -a, -um, magical [P4]
magis, adv., (compar. of magnum), more, rather [XXVIII]
magister, magistrī m., teacher *
magnopere, adv., very greatly [VI]
magnus, -a, -um, large, great *
maior, maius (compar. of magnus), greater [VIII]
målō, mālle, målūi, —, prefer [XXI]
malus, -a, -um, bad, evil, wicked *
maneō, manère, mānsi, mānsum, remain, stay *
māter, mātris f., mother *
mātem, adv. (superl. of magnopere) very greatly [XXVIII]
māximus, -a, -um, (superl. of magnus) most, greatest [XXVIII]
Medūsa, -ae f., Medusa, one of the Gorgons, whose gaze turned people to stone
melior, melius (compar. of bonus), better [VIII]
mēns, mentis (-ium) f., mind, intention [II]
mēntior, mentiri, mentitus sum, lie, tell a lie [XXVII]
mērgō, mergere, mersi, mersum, plunge, sink [P8]
mēritus, -a, -um, deserved, due [P9]
mēus, -ae m., my, mine *
miles, militis m., soldier *
Minerva, -ae f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom, war and weaving
mimus, -a, -um (superl. of parvus), smallest, least [IX]
mīnor, minus (compar. of parvus), smaller, less [VIII]
miser, misera, miserum, unhappy, wretched *
mittō, mittere, mittī, mittum, send *
modo, adv., only, just [II]
nōn modo … sed etiam, conj., not only … but also [II]
modus, -i m., manner, way [P5]
moenīa, -iūm n. pl., walls [IV]
moneō (2), advise, warn [X]
mōns, montis (-ium) m., mountain *
mōnstrō (1), show *
mōnstrum, -i n., monster [P6]
mora, -ae f., delay [P8]
mors, morti, mortīus sum, die [XXVIII]
mors, mortis (-ium) f., death [XXVIII]
moveō, movēre, movē, mótiō, mótiōn, move *
mov, adv., soon [P8]
multum, adv., much [VI]
multus, -a, -um, much, many *
mūniō (4), fortify *
mūrus, -i m., wall *
mūtō (1), change, transform [P5]

N
nam, conj., for [I]
nārrō (1), tell [P11]
Nāsō, Nāsōnis m., Publius Ovidius Naso (Ovid), Roman poet (43 B.C. – A.D. 17)
nātūra, -ae f., nature [P4]
nauta, -ae m., sailor *
nōsternoster, nostra, nostrum,
pater, patris  m.,
parvus, -a, -um,
pavor, pavōris  m.,
panic, terror
endure, experience, suffer
pato, patior, patī, passus sum,
Olympus, -ī  m.,
Mount Olympus, mountain on the border of
show, stretch out before
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum,
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsum,
nōn, adv.,
pauca, paucī, -ae, -a,
native land *
almost, practically
paene, paenē, paenī, -ae, -a,

nōstenos, nostrum / nostrī,
we,
Numa, -ae m.,
Numa Pompilius, legendary second king of

nōmen, nōminis  n.,
name *
nōn, adv., not *
nōn modo ... sed etiam, conj., not only ... but also [II]
nōs, nostrum / nostri, we, [III]
noster, nostra, nostrum, our *
novem, nine [XXIX]
novus, -a, -um, new [XXIV]
nox, noctis (-ium) f., night *
nūllos, -a, -um, no, not any, none [XXIX]
Numa, -ae m., Numa Pompilius, legendary second king of Rome (8th-7th century B.C.)

numquam, never [XIV]
nunc, adv., now [VII]
nuntiō (1), announce, report *
nuntius, -ī  m., messenger *

об (+ acc.), because of, on account of [VII]
occupō (1), seize [P6]
octo, eight [XXIX]
oculus, -i m., eye [IX]
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsum, offend [P6]
Olympus, -i m., Mount Olympus, mountain on the border of

omnīnō, entirely [P10]
omnis, -e, all, every *
onus, oneris n., burden *
opītus, -a, -um (superl. of bonus), best, excellent [IX]
opītō (1), desire [P6]
opītus, operis n., task, work *
ōrā, -e f., shore, edge, rim *
ōrāculum, -i n., oracle [P1]
ōs, oris n., mouth [VIII]

ostendō, ostendere, ostendi, ostentum, show, stretch out before [P10]

paeae, adv., almost, practically [P9]
parō (1), prepare *
pars, partis (-ium) f., part, direction [XXVIII]
parum, adv., too little [VI]
parvus, -a, -um, little, small *
pater, patris m., father *
patria, patris, native land *
pauca, -ae, -a, few [XXVII]
pavor, pavōris  m., panic, terror [P6]
paeae, adv., almost, practically [P9]
parō (1), prepare *
pars, partis (-ium) f., part, direction [XXVIII]
parum, adv., too little [VI]
parvus, -a, -um, little, small *
pater, patris m., father *
patria, patris, native land *
pauca, -ae, -a, few [XXVII]
pavor, pavōris  m., panic, terror [P6]

paeae, adv., almost, practically [P9]
parō (1), prepare *
pars, partis (-ium) f., part, direction [XXVIII]
parum, adv., too little [VI]
parvus, -a, -um, little, small *
pater, patris m., father *
patria, patris, native land *
pauca, -ae, -a, few [XXVII]
pavor, pavōris  m., panic, terror [P6]

quam, conj., than, rather than [VIII]
quam (+ superlative), adv., as...as possible [XXVIII]
quattuor, four [XXIX]
-que, adv., and *
qui, quae, quod, who, which, that, what [XVI]
quiēs, quiētis f., quiet, rest, sleep [P2]
quīnque, five [XXIX]
quod, conj., because *
quondam, adv., at one time, formerly, once [XXVII]
reddō, reddere, redidī, redītum, give back [P9]
redeō, redire, ῥεδί / ρεδιβι, reditum, go back [P11]
redigō, redigere, redēgī, redactum, drive back [V]
reditus, -ūs m., return [P8]
referō, referre, rettuli, relātum, bring back, refer [XIX]
rēgia, -ae f., palace [P3]
rēgō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, rule *
sēdēs, sēdis f., sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, perceive
Lucius Annaeus Seneca (ca. 2 B.C.-A.D. 65)
Seneca, -ae m., himself, herself, itself, themselves
sibi (dat. of reflexive suī)
rūrsus, adv., Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
Rūma, -ae f., Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
rūrsus, adv., again [P8]

S
sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy *
saepe, adv., often [XIV]
salūs, salūtis f., safety [P9]
sanguis, sanguinis m., blood [P8]
sapiēns, sapientis, wise *
saxum, -ī m., rock, stone
sceles, scelēris, crime [VIII]
scriba, -ae m., secretary, writer *
scribō, scribere, scrīptum, write *
se (acc. / abl. of suī), himself, herself, itself, themselves [XIV]
secundus, -a, -um, second [XXIX]
sed, conj., but *
nōn modo … sed etiam, conj., not only … but also [II]
sedeō, sedere, sēdi, sessum, sit *
sēdēs, sēdis f., abode, seat [P2]
semper, adv., always [XIV]
serētus, -ūs m., senate [XXI]
Seneca, -ae m., Lucius Annaeus Seneca (ca. 2 B.C.-A.D. 65)
philosopher and advisor to Nero
sentio, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsum, feel, perceive [XXII]
septem, seven [XXIX]
sequeor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow [XVIII]
Seriphōs, -ī f., Seriphos, island in the Cyclades
servō (1), save, guard, watch over *
servus, -i m., slave *
sex, six [XXIX]
sibi (dat. of reflexive suī), himself, herself, itself, themselves
sīdus, sīderis n., star [XXVI]
silva, -ae f., forest, woods *
similis, -e, like, similar *
sine (+ abl.), without *
sinus, -ūs m., boom, embrace [P1]
socius, -i m., ally [I]
sōlūs, -a, -um, alone, only, sole [XXIX]
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, loosen, release, unbend [P9]

somnus, -i m., sleep *
soror, sororis f., sister *
speciēs, -ei f., appearance, sight *
speculum, -i n., mirror, looking glass [P4]
spēs, spei f., hope *
statim, adv., at once, immediately [XVII]
stō, stāre, steti, statum, stand *
sub (+ abl.), under *
subēō, subire, subiī / subivi, subitum, undergo [XXVI]
subitō, adv., suddenly [XXII]
suī (gen.), himself, herself, itself, themselves [XIV]
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be *
surgō, surgere, surrexi, surrectum, rise, stretch upward, swell *
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their (own) [XIV]

tālāria, -ium pl., winged sandals [P4]
tamen, conj., nevertheless, yet [VII]
tandem, adv., at length, finally [XII]
tegō, tegere, réctum, rule *
tēlum, -i n., javelin, weapon *
tempestās, tempestātis f., storm, tempest, weather [P1]
tempus, temporis n., time [I]
tendō, tendere, tendenti, tentum, extend, proceed, stretch out *
teneō, tenère, tenui, tentum, hold, contain *
tergum, -i n., back [P5]
terra, -ae f., land, earth, country *
terreō (2), frighten *
terror, terrōris m., fear, terror [P9]
tertiōs, -a, -um, third [XXIX]
timeō, timēre, timuī, —, be afraid of, fear *
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, lift, raise [P8]
tōtus, -a, -um, entire, whole [XXIX]
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, hand across, hand down [P6]
trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum, drag [XI]
transquillus, -a, -um, calm, tranquil [P2]
trans (+ acc.) across [VIII]
transīgō, transīgere, transēgī, transactum, across, accomplish, finish,
ter, run through [V]
trēs, tria, three [XXIX]
tristis, -e, sad *
tū, you (sg.) [III]
tum, adv., at that time, then [VII]
tunc, adv., at that time, then [VII]
turbō (1), disturb, stir up [P1]
turpis, -e, disgraceful [P3]
tītus, -a, -um, safe [P2]
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours *

U
ubi, adv., when, where [XII]
ullus, -a, -um, any [XXIX]
umbra, -ae f., shadow, ghost *
umerus, -i m., shoulder [XIII]
unda, -ae f., wave [P8]
undique, adv., on all sides [P8]
ūnus, -a, -um, one [XXIX]
urbs, urbis (-ium) f., city *
ūsus, -ūs m., use, application, practice, skill [XXI]
ut (+ ind.), conj., as [XIX]
uter, utra, utrum, which (of two) [XXIX]
utīlis, -e, useful *
uxor, uxōris f., wife [P9]
V
vacuus, -a, -um, empty [P9]
vātēs, vātis m., seer, prophet [P6]
veneriō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, come *
vĕntus, -ī m., wind *
verbum, -ī n., word *
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear, respect [XVIII]
Vergilius, -ī m., Publius Vergilius Maro (Vergil), Roman poet (70-19 B.C.)
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, turn [P5]
vestēr, vestra, vestrum, your, yours *
vētō, vetāre, vetuī, —, forbid, order . . . not [XIII]

**ENGLISH – LATIN VOCABULARY**

A

about, dē (+ abl.) *
accomplish, trānsīgō, trānsīgere, trānsēgī, trānsactum [V]
across, trans (+ acc.) [VIII]
advice, moneō (2) *
affect, rēs, rei f. *
after, post (+ acc.) [VII]; (adv.), postquam [VII]
against, in (+ acc.) *
al, omnis, -e *
ally, socius, -ī m. [I]
alone, sōlus, -a, -um [XXIX]
along with, cum (+ abl.) *
already, iam, conj. [XXII]
also, etiam, conj. [I]
always, semper [XIV]
among, inter (+ acc.) [VIII]
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um [XXIV]
and, ac, atque [XVII], et, -que *
and…not, nec, neque [XXII]
anger, ira, -ae f. *
angry, irātus, -a, -um *
announcer, nuntiō (1) *
another, alius, -a, -um [XXIX]
any, ullus, -a, -um [XXIX]
appear, videō, vidēre, vidi, visum (pass.) *
appearance, speciēs, -īae f. *
application, usus, -ūs m. [XXI]
army, exercitus, -ūs m. *
around, circum (+ acc.) [VIII]
as, ut (+ ind.) [XIX]
as…as possible, quam (+ superlative), adv. [XXVIII]
ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendi, ascēnsum
ask, rogō (1) *
avia, -ae f., road, way [XII]
videō, vidēre, vidi, visum, see, (pass.) seem, appear, be seen
vincō, vincere, vici, victum, conquer, defeat [XVI]
vinculum, -ī n., bond [P9]
vir, virī m., man *
virgō, virginis f., maiden [XVII]
virtūs, virtūtis f., courage [P3]
vita, -ae f., life [III]
vitam agere, lead a life [III]
vitō (1), avoid, escape [P1]
vivō, vivere, vixi, victum, live [XII]
vix, adv., hardly, scarcely [XIX]
vocō (1), call *
volō (1), fly [P4]
vōs, vestrum / vestrī, you (pl.) [II]
vōx, vōcis f., voice *
vulnerō (1), wound, hurt *

B

bad, malus, -a, -um *
be, sum, esse, fi, futūrus *
be able, possum, posse, potui, — [XIII]
be afraid of, timeō, timēre, timuī, — *
be away, absum, abesse, adsum, aitūrus [XXIV]
be inflamed, ardeo, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus [I]
be present, adsum, adesse, aitūrus, aitūrus [XXIV]
be seen, videō, vidēre, vidi, visum, (pass.) *
be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [XXXI]
beach, litus, litoris n. *
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum [XIX]
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum *
because, quod, conj. *
because of, ob (+ acc.), propter (+ acc.) [VII]
before, ante (+ acc.) [VIII]
before, antequam, conj. [VII]
begin, incipio, incipere, incēpi, inceptum [IV]
benefit, fructus, -īs m. [XXI]
best, optimus, -a, -um (superl. of bonus) [IX]
better, melior, melius (compar. of bonus) [VIII]
between, inter (+ acc.) [VIII]
bid, iubō, iubēre, iussī, iussum [XIII]
black, āter, ātra, ātrum *
blaze, ardeo, arderé, arsī, arsūrus [I]
blow, ictus, -ūs  m. [XXI]
body, corpus, corporis  n. *
bold, audāx, audācis *
book, liber, libri  m. *
boy, puer, puerī  m.*
brave, fortis, -e *
bravery, animus, -ī  m. (pl.) [XIII]
brass, pōns, pontis (-ium) m. *
brief, brevis, -e *
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum [XIX]
bring back, referō, referre, rettulī, relātum [XIX]
brother, frāter, frātris  m. *
burden, onus, oneris  n. *
burn, ardeo, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus [I]
but, at, conj. 
not only … but also, nōn modo … sed etiam, conj. [II]
by, ā, ab (+ abl.) *
Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris m.
call, vocō (1) *
camp, castra, -ōrum n. pl. [IV]
can, possum, posse, potuī, — [XIII]
capture, capiō, capere, cēpī, captum *
care, cūra, -ae  f. 
carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum 
carry on, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum *
chance, ċausus, -ūs  m. *
chest, corpus, corporis  n. *
choose, legō, legere, lēgī, lectum [XXIII]
citizen, cīvis, cīvis (-ium) m. / f. *
city, urbs, urbis (-ium) f. *
coast, lītus, lītoris  n. *
collapse, lābor, lābī, lapsus sum [XVIII]
college, lābor, lābī, lapsus sum [XVIII]
column (of men), agmen, agminis  n. [XVI]
coma, veniō, venīre, vēni, ventum *
command, iubō, iubēre, iussī, iussum [XIII]
companion, comes, comitis  m. / f. [VI]
compel, cogō, cogere, coēgī, coactum [V]
compete, contendō, contendere, contendit, contentum [XVI]
conceal, tegō, tegere, tēxi, tectum *
concern, cūra, -ae f. [XIX]
concerning, dē (+ abl.) *
conduct, gero, gerere, gessī, gestum *
conquer, vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum [XVI]
consider, habeo (2) [I], putō (1) [IV]
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis  m. [XIX]
contain, tenēō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum *
country, terra, -ae f. *
cover, tegō, tegere, tēxi, tectum *
crime, scelus, sceleris  n. [VIII]

D
dark, āter, ātra, ātrum *
dark, āter, ātra, ātrum *
dark, āter, ātra, ātrum *
dark, āter, ātra, ātrum *
dark, āter, ātra, ātrum *
dark, āter, ātra, ātrum *
dark, āter, ātra, ātrum *
intention, mēns, mentis (-ium) f. [II]
into, in (+ acc.) *
iron, ferrum, -ī n. [XXIII]
Italy, Italia, -ae f.
itsel (intensive), ipse, ipsa, ipsum [XXVI]
itsel (reflexive), suī, sibi, sē, sē [XIV]

J
javelin, tēlum, -ī n. *
jealousy, invidia, -ae, f. [III]
journey, iter, itineris n. *
joyful, laetus, -a, -um [XXIV]
just, modo, adv. [II]

K
keen, ācer, ācris, ācre *
kill, interficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum *
kind, genus, -eris n. [VIII]
king, rēx, rēgis m. *
kingsdom, rēgnum, -ī n. *
labor, labor, labōris m. [XIX]
land, terra, -ae f. *
large, magnus, -a, -um *

L
labor, labor, labōris m. [XIX]
land, terra, -ae f. *
leave, excedō, excedere, excessī, excessum [XI]
leave behind, relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum [XI]
less, minor, minus [IX]
letter, epistula, -ae f. *
lie, mentior, mentīrī, mentitus sum [XVIII]
life, vita, -ae f. [III]
light, lūmen, lūminis n. [XVI]; lūx, lūcis f. *
like (adj.), similis, -e *
like (verb), amō (1) *
listen to, audiō (4) *
little, parvus, -a, -um *
live, vivō, vivere, vīxi, victum [XI]
long, longus, -a, -um *
look into or upon, inspiciō, inspicerē, inspexi, inspectum [XVII]
love, amō (1) *
low, humilis, -e [IX]
loyal, pius, -a, -um *
loyalty, fidēs, -ei f. *
luck, fortūna, -ae f. [III]

M
maiden, virgō, virginis f. [XVII]
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum *
make a journey, iter facere *
make a mistake, errō (1) *
make an effort, contendō, contendere, contendi, contentum [XVI]
man, homō, hominis m [XVII], vir, virī m. *
many, multus, -a, -um *
march, contendō, contendere, contendi, contentum [XVI]
march, iter facere *
master, dominus, -i m. *
matter, rēs, rei f. *
messenger, nuntius, -i m. *
mind, animus, -i m. [XIII]; mēns, mentis (-ium) f. [II]
mine, meus, -a, -um *
misfortune, cāsus, -ūs m. *
mood, lūna, -ae, f. [XII]
mor, magis (compar. of magnopere) [XXVIII]
mountain, mōns, montis (-ium) m. *
mount, mōs, oris n. [XII]
move, moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum *
much, multum, adv. [VI]
much, multus, -a, -um *
my, meus, -a, -um *
myself (intensive) ipse, ipsa, ipsum [XXVI]
myself (reflexive) meī, mihi, mē, mé [XIV]

N
name, nōmen, nōminis n. *
nation, gēns, gentis (-ium) f. *
native land, patria, -ae *
nearest, proximus, -a, -um *
neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum [XXIX]
neither…nor, neque…neque, conj. [XXII]
ever, numquam, conj. [XIV]
evertheless, tamen, conj. [VII]
new, novus, -a, -um [XXIV]
next, proximus, -a, -um *
night, nox, nocīs (-ium) f. *
nine, novem [XXIX]
no, nullus, -a, -um [XXIX]
one, nullus, -a, -um [XXIX]
no one, nēmō, nēminis m. / f. [XIV]

nothing, nihil (indecl.) n. [XIV]
nor, nec, neque, conj. [XXII]
not, nōn, adv. *
not any, nullus, -a, -um [XXIX]
not only… but also, nōn modo… sed etiam, conj. [II]
not want, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [XXI]
not wish, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [XXI]

nothing, nihil (indecl.) n. [XIV]

now, iam, conj. [XXII]; nunc, adv. [VII]

O
often, saepe, adv. [XIV]
on, in (+ abl.) *
on account of, ob (+ acc.); propter (+ acc.) [VII]
on behalf of, pró (+ abl.) *
once, quondam, adv. [XXVII]
one, únus, -a, -um [XXIX]
only, modo, adv. [II], sólus, -a, -um [XXIX]
on, in (+ acc.) *
or, aut, conj. [II]
order, iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum [XIII]
order . . . not, vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum [XIII]
other, alius, -a, -um [XXIX]
or, nostr, nostra, nostrum *
ourselves (intensive) ipsī, ipsae, ipsa [XXVI]
ourselves (reflexive) nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbis [XIV]
out of, ē, ex (+ abl.) *

P

painfully, aegrē, adv. [VI]
part, pars, partis (-ium) f. [XXVIII]
pay the penalty, poenās dare
perceive, cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum *; sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum [XXII]
pick out, legō, legere, lēgī, lectum [XXIII]
pirate, pīrāta, -ae  m. *
place (noun), locus, -i m. (loca, -ōrum n. pl.) [IV]
place (verb), pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum *
poem, poetā, -ae  m. *
power, imperium, -ī  n. 
practice, ĭusus, -īs m. [XXI]
praise, laudō (1) *
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, — [XXI]
prepare, parō (1) *
proceed, tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum *
public, públicus, -a, -um [XXIV]
punish, puniō (4) *
punishment, poena, -ae f. [XIX]
put, pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum *

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae  f. *
quick, celer, celeris, celere *

R

rage, furor, -ōris  m. [XIX]
rather, magis, adv. [XXVIII]
rather than, quam, conj. [VIII]
read, legō, legere, lēgī, lectum [XXIII]
receive, accipió, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum *
refer, refero, referre, reftul, relātum [XIX]
remain, manēō, manère, mānsī, mānsum *
report, rūntio (1) *
republic, rēs pública, rei públicae f. [XXIV]
reputation, fāma, -ae f. [III]
respect, vereor, verērī, veritūs sum [XVIII]
righ, īūs, īūris n. *
rīm, ōra, -ae f. *
rise, surgō, surgere, sūrēctum *
road, itineris n. *; via, -ae f. [XII]
rock, saxum, -i n. [XVII]
roll, volvō, volvere, volvī, volvōrum *
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae f.
rule (noun), imperium, -i n. [XXIII]
rule (verb), regō, regere, réxi, réctum *
rumor, fāma, -ae f. [III]
rung, currō, -ere, cucurrī, currūsum [XXII]
rung away, fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus *
rung through, trānsigō, trānsigere, trānsīctum, trānsactum [V]

S

sad, trīstis, -e *
sailor, nauta, -ae m. *
same, idem, eadem, idem [I]
save, servō (1) *
say, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum *
scarcely, vix, adv. [XIX]
sea, flūctus, -ūs m. *, mare, maris (-ium) n. *
second, secundus, -a, -um [XXIX]
secretary, scriba, -ae  m. *
see, vídeo, vidēre, vidi, visum *
seek, petō, petere, petīvī, petītum [III]
seem, vídeo, vidēre, vidi, visum, (pass.) *
seize, capiō, capere, cápi, cáptum *
seine, caeclum, -īs m. [XXI]
send, mittō, mittere, mittī, mittum *
serious, gravis, -e *
seriously, graviter, adv.
set up, pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum *
seven, septem [XXIX]
shadow, umbra, -ae f. *
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre *
shelter, tegō, tegere, tēxī, tectum *
ship, nāvis, nāvis (-ium) f. *
short, litus, litoris n. *; ōra, -ae f. *
short, brevis, -e *
shoulde, umerus, -i m. [XIII]
shoot, clāmō (1) [XXII]
show, monstrō (1) *
sick, aeger, aergrae, aegrum *
sight, speciēs, -ēī f. *
similar, similis, -e *
sing, cantō (1) *
slizer, soror, sorōris f. *
sit, sedēo, sedère, sēdi, sessum *
situation, rēs, rei, f.
six, sex [XXIX]
skill, ūsus, -ūs m. [XXI]
sky, caelum, -i n. [XXIII]
slove, servus, -i m. *
sleep, somnus, -i m. *
slender, gracilis, -e [IX]
slip, lábor, lábi, lapsus sum [XVIII]
small, parvus, -a, -um *
smaller, minor, minus (compar. of parvus) [VIII]
smallest, minimus, -a, -um (superl. of parvus) [IX]
soldier, miles, militis m. *
sole, sólus, -a, -um [XXIX]
son, fīlius, -ī m. *
song, carmen, carminis n. *
sort, genus, -eris n. [VIII]
speak, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum *
spirit, animus, -ī m. [XIII]
spouse, coniunx, coniugis m./f. [XXVII]
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum *
stay, maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum *
step, gradus, -ūs m. *
stone, saxum, -ī n. [XVII]
stop, cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstitī, — [XI]
story, fama, -ae, f. [III]
stretch out, tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum *
stretch upward, surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum *
strike, ictus, -ūs m. [XXI]
strive, contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum [XVI]
strong, fortis, -e *
student, discipulus, -ī m. [XIII]
suddenly, subitō, adv. [XXII]
suffer, patior, patī, passus sum [XVIII]
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um [XXVIII]
sweet, dulcis, -e *
swell, surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum *
swift, celer, celeris, celere *
sword, ferrum, -ī n. [XXIII]

T

take, capiō, capere, cēpī, captum *
talk about, dē (+ dat.) agere [III]
tall, altus, -a, -um *
task, opus, operis n. *
teach, docēo, docēre, docuī, doctum *
teacher, magister, magistrī m. *
tear, lacrima, -ae f. [XIX]
tell, dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictum *
tell a lie, mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum [XVIII]
territory (pl.), finēs, finium, m. [IV]
than, quam [VIII]
thank, gratiās agere (+ dat.) [III]
thanks (pl.), gratiae, -ārum f. [III]
that, ille, illa, illud [XI]; is, ea, id [I]
that, qui, quae, quod [XVI]
that (of yours), iste, ista, istud [XI]
the other (of two), alter, altera, alterum [XXIX]
their (own), suus, -a, -um [XIV]
themselves (intensive) ipsi, ipsae, ipsum [XXVI]
themselves (reflexive) sūi, sibi, sè, sē [XIV]
them, tum, tunc, adv. [VII]
there, ibi, adv. [XII]
therefore, igitur, conj. [VII]
these (pl.), hic, haec, hoc [VI]

thing, rēs, rei f. *
think, putō (1) [IV]
third, tertius, -a, -um [XXIX]
this, hic, haec, hoc [VI], is, ea, id [I]
those (pl.), ille, illa, illud [XI]
three, trēs, tria [XXIX]
through, per (+ acc.) [VIII]
time, tempus, tempōris n. [I]
tired, fessus, -a, -um *
to, ad (+ acc.) *
today, hodiē, adv. [III]
tomorrow, crās, adv. [III]
too little, parum, adv. [VI]
towards, ad (+ acc.) *
treat, agō, agere, ēgī, actum [III]
tribe, gens, gentis (-ium) f. *
try, cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum [XVIII]
two, duo, duae, duo [XXIX]

U

under, sub (+ abl.) *
undergo, subeō, subīre, subīvī, subitum [XXVI]
unhappy, miser, misera, miserum *
unlike, dissimilis, -e [IX]
use, āsus, -ās m. [XXI]
useful, ūtilis, -e *

V

vast, ingēns, ingentis *
very bad, pessimus, -a, -um (superl. of malus) [IX]
very badly, pessimē (superl. of male), adv. [XXVIII]
very good, optimus, -a, -um (superl. of bonus) [IX]
very greatly, maxime (superl. of magnopere), adv. [XXVIII]
very many, plurimus, -a, -um (superl. of multus) [IX]
very well, optimē (superl. of bene), adv. [XXVIII]
voice, vōx, vōcis f. *

W

wage war, bellum gerere *
wall, mūrus, -ī m. *
walls, moenia, -ium n. pl. [IV]
wander, errō (1) *
want, volō, velle, voluī, — [XXI]
wars, bellum, i n. *
warn, moneō (2) *
watch over, servō (1) *
water, aqua, -ae f. *
way, iter, itineris n.; via, -ae f. [XII]
we, nōs [II]
weapon, tēlum, -ī n. *
well, bene, adv. [VI]
what, qui, quae, quod [XVI]
where, ubi, adv. [XII]
which, quī, quae, quod [XVI]
which (of two), uter, utra, utrum [XXIX]
while, dum, conj. (with present indicative) [II]
who, which, that (rel. pron.), qui, quae, quod [XVI]
whole, tōtus, -a, -um [XXIX]
wicked, malus, -a, -um *
wife, coniunx, coniugis, f. [XXVII]
wind, ventus, -i m. *
wise, sapiens, sapientis *
wish, volo, velle, volui, — [XXI]
with, cum (+ abl.) *
with difficulty, aegre [VI]
without, sine (+ abl.) *
woods, silva, -ae f. *
word, verbum, -i n. *
work, labor, labōris m. [XIX], opus, operis n. *
worry, cūra, -ae f. [XIX]
worse, peior, peius (compar. of malus) [IX]
worst, pessimus, -a, -um (superl. of malus) [IX]
wound, vulnerō (1) *
wrath, ira, -ae f. *
wretched, miser, misera, miserum *
write, scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum *
writer, scriba, -ae m. *

Y

year, annus, -i m. *
yesterday, heri, adv. [III]
yet, tamen, conj. [VII]
you (pl.), vōs, vestrum / vestri [II]
you (sg.), tū, tuī [II]
your(sg.), tuus, -a, -um *
your(pl.), vester, vestra, vestrum *
yours(sg.), tuus, -a, -um *
yours(pl.), vester, vestra, vestrum *
yourself (intensive) ipse, ipsa, ipsum [XXVI]
yourself (reflective) tūi, tībī, tē, tē, (pl.) vestrī, vōbis, vōs, vōbis
INDEX

Ablative:
   Accompaniment, 1
   Cause, 22
   Comparison, 16
   Degree of Difference, 18
   Manner, 38
   Means or Instrument, 1
   Motion away from or Place to Which, 1
   Personal Agent, 1
   Place Where, 1
   Time When, 1
   with prepositions, 1
Accusative and Infinitive with iubeō and vetō, 26
Accusative and Infinitive of Indirect Statement: 44, 46
Adjectives:
   Regular Comparison, 14
   Irregular Comparison, 16
Adverbs:
   Formation, 12
   Comparison, 56
Antecedent: 32
Cause: 22
Clauses: definition, main, subordinate: 44
Comparison:
   Adjectives: 14, 16
   Adverbs: 56
Complementary Infinitive: 8, 26, 42
Compounds:
   Agō: 11
   Dis-, ante-, post-: 21
   Eō: 61
   Ferō: 41
   Mālō: 51
   Nolō: 51
   Possum: 31
   Sequor: 41
   Sum: 51
Compound Subjects: 4
Conjunctions: subordinate and coordinate: 44
Connected Prose: 14
Cum as Enclitic: 4, 28, 32
Dative in -i: 2, 22, 32, 52, 58
Demonstratives: 2, 12, 22
Deponent Verbs: 36
Eius, eōrum, eārum: 2, 28
Enclitic cum: 4, 28, 32
Eō: 52, 61
Ferō: 38, 41
Finite Verb: 8
Genitive in -ius: 2, 14, 22, 32, 52, 58
Hic, hae, hoc: 12
Idem, eadem, idem: 2
Indirect Statement: 46, 48
Infinitives:
   Complementary: 8, 26, 42
   Object, Subject: 8
   Infinitive Phrase: 54
Intensive: 52
Ipse, ipsa, ipsum: 52
Is, ea, id: 2
Iste, ista, istud: 22
Magis: 56
Maximē: 56
Mālō: 42, 51
Nolō: 42, 51
Numbers, Cardinal and Ordinal 58
Ob, cause: 22
Participles: 6
Participle Phrases: 54
Perseus 1 and 2: 15
Perseus 3 and 4: 25
Perseus 5 and 6: 35
Perseus 7 and 8: 45
Perseus 9 and 10: 55
Perseus 11: 61
Phrase: 44
Possum: 26, 30
Prepositional Phrase: 54
Pronouns:
   Demonstrative Phrase, 2, 12, 22
   Intensive, 52
   Reflexive, 28
   Relative, 32
   Proper, cause: 22
Quam:
   with Comparison: 16
   with Superlative: 56
Qui, quae, quod: 32
Reading: 14, 24, 34, 44, 54
Reflexive: Adjective, Pronoun: 28
Relative Pronoun: 32
Review Lessons: 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60
Third Rule of Concord: 32
Volō: 42, 51